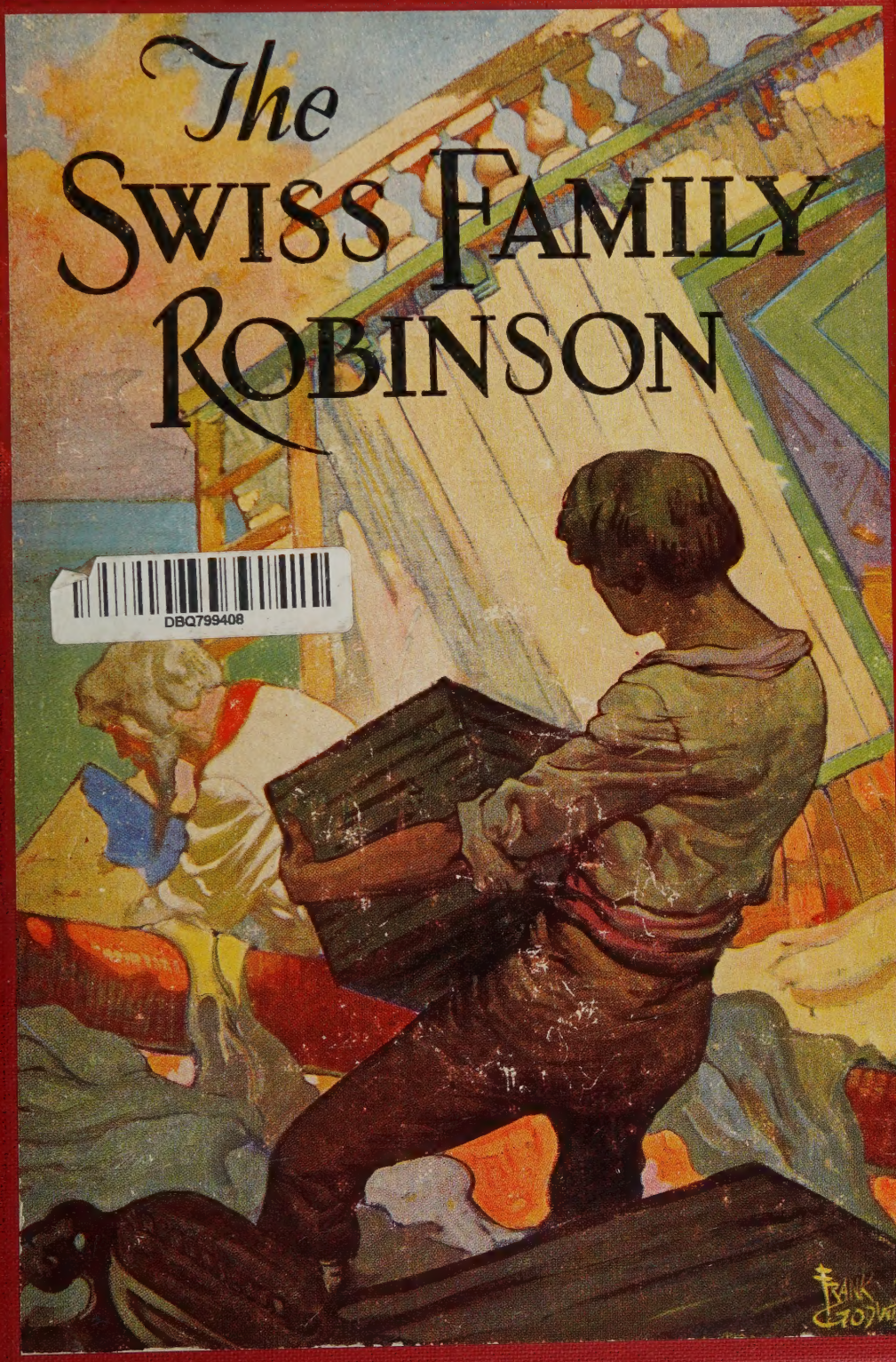
# The Swiss Family Robinson




DBQ799408

To Robert in appreciation
of his work as "Milk-Boy"
at Washington School
Christmas-19

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2024

https://archive.org/details/swissfamilyrobin0000unse_a4s0

Already the tempest had continued six days

# THE SWISS FAMILY ROBINSON

BY
DAVID WYSS

INTRODUCTION BY
M. D. HOLMES

ILLUSTRATED BY
FRANK GODWIN

THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY
CHICAGO PHILADELPHIA TORONTO

Copyright, 1929, by
THE JOHN C. WINSTON COMPANY

COPYRIGHT IN GREAT BRITAIN
THE BRITISH DOMINIONS AND POSSESSIONS
COPYRIGHT IN THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS

All rights reserved

PRINTED IN THE U. S. A.

# CONTENTS


| | | PAGE |
|---|---|---|
| INTRODUCTION | | ix |
| CHAPTER | | |
| I. | A SHIPWRECK | 1 |
| II. | A LANDING | 13 |
| III. | A VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY | 26 |
| IV. | AN ALARM BY NIGHT | 36 |
| V. | THE RETURN TO THE WRECK | 42 |
| VI. | A TROOP OF ANIMALS IN CORK JACKETS | 52 |
| VII. | THE CONSTRUCTION OF A BRIDGE | 64 |
| VIII. | A CHANGE OF ABODE | 72 |
| IX. | THE CONSTRUCTION OF A LADDER | 78 |
| X. | THE SETTLING IN THE GIANT TREE | 84 |
| XI. | THE FIRST SABBATH IN EXILE | 87 |
| XII. | HOPES OF A SLEDGE—FISHING—A KANGAROO. | 97 |
| XIII. | MORE STORES FROM THE WRECK—THE TORTOISE HARNESSED | 102 |
| XIV. | THE PINNACE SECURED | 109 |
| XV. | VARIOUS DISCOVERIES AND SINGULAR ANIMALS | 117 |
| XVI. | USEFUL OCCUPATIONS AND LABORS | 128 |
| XVII. | A NEW DOMAIN—THE TROOP OF BUFFALOES. | 133 |
| XVIII. | THE MALABAR EAGLE | 141 |
| XIX. | TREATMENT OF BEES AND TRAINING OF ANIMALS | 149 |
| XX. | THE RAINY SEASON | 159 |
| XXI. | SPRING—THE HOUSE IN THE SALT ROCK | 166 |
| XXII. | NEW EXPERIMENTS AND DISCOVERIES | 175 |
| XXIII. | TWO FARMHOUSES—A LAKE—ATHLETIC CONTESTS | 180 |
| XXIV. | THE DOVECOT AND ITS MANAGEMENT | 187 |

XXV. Jack's Narrow Escape—Another Rainy Season..... 194
XXVI. A Whale and Its Uses..... 203
XXVII. The Rowing Machine—a Turtle Drive.. 208
XXVIII. A Dangerous Visitor..... 213
XXIX. The Discovery of a Crystal Grotto..... 221
XXX. Ostriches and Bears..... 231
XXXI. A Hunt and a Capture..... 247
XXXII. Progress in Ostrich Discipline—the New Hat..... 252
XXXIII. The Return of the Rainy Season—the Cajack..... 261
XXXIV. An Adventure with Sea Cows—the Drawbridge..... 269
XXXV. A Combat with a Hyena—A Flying Courier 276
XXXVI. A General Review of the Colony After Ten Years of Establishment..... 287
XXXVII. Fritz Discovers Pearls—News of a Fellow Creature..... 294
XXXVIII. An Encounter with a Lion and a Lioness —A Savage..... 303
XXXIX. Sir Edward Montrose—Our Adopted Sister—Attack of Wolves..... 310
XL. Emily's Own Story—The Winter Season Once More..... 324
XLI. Conclusion..... 330

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

ALREADY THE TEMPEST HAD CONTINUED SIX DAYS..*Frontispiece*

PAGE

WHEN WE HAD FINISHED, WE FOUND THAT WE HAD PRODUCED A KIND OF NARROW BOAT..... 9

IT WAS IN VAIN THAT WE USED OUR TELESCOPE IN ALL DIRECTIONS; NO TRACE OF MAN APPEARED..... 31

WHAT NOW REMAINED TO BE DONE WAS TO LAY SOME SHORT PLANKS ACROSS THE TIMBERS..... 69

FLORA CAUGHT HOLD OF THE FLAMINGO, AND HELD HIM FAST TILL I REACHED THE SPOT..... 80

WE STOLE SOFTLY TO THE PLACE WHERE THE ANIMAL LAY. 120

WE ENTERED THE ROCK IN SOLEMN PROCESSION..... 172

OUR DOGS WERE ALREADY AT THE ATTACK..... 239

WE HAD THE SATISFACTION OF SEEING OUR NEW COURSER GALLOPING AWAY WITH ONE OF OUR CAVALIERS ON HIS BACK..... 257

THE CURRENT SWEPT FRITZ AWAY IN SPITE OF HIMSELF.. 271

THE LIONESS RAN STRAIGHT UP TO THE CORPSE OF HER LATE PARTNER..... 305

THE DELICATE CONTOUR OF THE FEATURES CONVINCED ME THAT I WAS IN THE PRESENCE OF A FEMALE..... 321

# INTRODUCTION

ONCE upon a time—to be exact, in the latter part of the eighteenth century—in the city of Berne, among the mountains of Switzerland, there lived a family of four children. Their father, a clergyman, was a chaplain in the army. His name was David Wyss. He was very fond of his boys and girls, and every evening, when dark came on and the candles were lighted, they would gather around him to be told a story. Sometimes it would be a fairy tale, sometimes a legend of ancient heroes, sometimes a stirring incident out of the splendid history of their brave little country. But one winter he had a subject that lasted him for months; for he happened to meet a Russian sea captain who told him how on one of his voyages he had found, on a desert island near New Guinea, a shipwrecked Swiss clergyman and his family.

The story interested David Wyss and set his imagination to work. He began that very evening to tell his children of the adventures of the Swiss Family Robinson, a family just like their own, with four children, although these were all boys. Night after night the narrative went on. Mr. Wyss seems to have had an endless store of information about

the plants and animals of that far-off region in the South Seas where New Guinea lies, not far from the East India Islands. He had, too, a remarkable amount of information about how to do things and make things. Moreover, he had read Daniel Defoe's *Robinson Crusoe*, which, in the eighteenth century, was very popular and had been translated into many languages.

The Wyss children liked their serial story so well that after a time their father wrote it down for them. He never had it printed; but after his death his son, Johann Wyss, a professor in the University at Berne, took the manuscript to a publisher, and it appeared in 1813 as a printed book. It was written in German, the language spoken by many of the Swiss. By some accident the name of the son became confused with that of the father, so that many people have thought Johann Wyss the author. Years later the book was translated into French; and finally, in 1868, came the first English version of what William Dean Howells called "one of the dearest old books in the world."

The boy or girl who reads this volume can feel that he is in good company—the companionship of other boys and girls who all through the last hundred years have been making acquaintance with the Robinsons. They were boys and girls, to be sure, dressed in roundabout jackets and hoop skirts. The books they read were badly printed and had no beautiful

illustrations. They went to queer little schools where they learned only a few of the things that children nowadays are taught; and they knew nothing about radios or movies or automobiles. But, just like children nowadays, they admired courage and longed for adventure; and they were interested in clever people who could make the best of a hard situation. They liked—as you will like—the brave, adventurous, high-spirited Robinson boys and their wise, ingenious, resourceful father and mother. And they probably wondered—as you will wonder—whether, if they were shipwrecked on an uninhabited island, they could make as beautiful and happy a home for themselves as the Swiss Family Robinson did.

In this book, although it is somewhat shortened and simplified, the old-fashioned words and style of the early translations of David Wyss have been kept. You will like the quaint sound. Perhaps you will find it pleasant to associate with a group of people who, even though they are members of the same family, are always polite and respectful to each other in the courtly way of olden times. The parents are always considerate of the children, and the children always obey and honor their parents.

Do not try to find the island on the map, for you will not succeed. No one knows just where it is. Some people have suspected that it was a sort of magic island, for on it the Robinsons found every animal and plant they needed for food, shelter, cloth-

ing, and comfort. All that the island did not provide they were able to save from the wrecked vessel. The father, in his way, was a magician, for he knew how to turn everything to use and what to do in every emergency.

You will not feel sorry for these shipwrecked folk, as you do for poor Robinson Crusoe. They love each other, they trust in God, and they are too busy to feel sorry for themselves. As for you, whether you like best clever Fritz, lazy Ernest, venturesome Jack, or baby Francis, you will find something new on every page.

—M. D. Holmes

# THE SWISS FAMILY ROBINSON

## CHAPTER I

## A SHIPWRECK

ALREADY the tempest had continued six days; on the seventh its fury seemed still increasing; and the morning dawned upon us without a prospect of hope, for we had wandered so far from the right track, and were so forcibly driven toward the southeast, that none on board knew where we were. The ship's company were exhausted by labor and watching, and the courage which had sustained them was now sinking. The shivered masts had been cast into the sea; several leaks appeared, and the ship began to fill. The sailors forbore from swearing; many were at prayer on their knees.

"My beloved children," said I to my four boys, who clung to me in their fright, "God can save us, for nothing is impossible to Him. We must, however, believe that what He sees fit to do is best. Death may be well supported when it does not separate those who love."

My wife wiped the tears which were falling on her cheeks, and from this moment became more tranquil. We all fell on our knees, and prayed to the God of Mercy to protect us. Fritz, my eldest son, implored, in a loud voice, that God would save his dear parents and his brothers, generously unmindful of himself: the boys rose from their posture with a state of mind so improved that they seemed forgetful of the impending danger. I myself began to feel my hopes increase. Heaven will surely have pity on them, thought I, and will save their parents to guard their tender years!

At this moment a cry of "Land, land!" was heard through the roaring of the waves, and instantly the vessel struck against a rock with so violent a motion as to drive everyone from his place; a tremendous cracking succeeded, as if the ship were going to pieces; the sea rushed in, in all directions; we perceived that the vessel had grounded, and could not long hold together. The captain called out that all was lost, and bade the men lose not a moment in putting out the boats. The sounds fell on my heart like a thrust from a dagger.

"We are lost!" I exclaimed, and the children broke out into piercing cries. But I reminded them that the water had not yet reached us, that the ship was near land, and that God would assist the brave. "Keep where you are," added I, "while I go and examine what is best to be done."

I now went on the deck. A wave instantly threw me down, and wetted me to the skin; another followed, and then another. A scene of terrific and complete disaster met my eyes: the ship was shattered in all directions, and on one side there was a complete breach. The ship's company crowded into the boats till they could contain not one man more, and the last who entered were now cutting the ropes to move off. I called to them with almost frantic entreaties to stop and receive us also, but in vain; for the roaring of the sea prevented my being heard, and the waves, which rose to the height of mountains, would have made it impossible to return. All hope from this source was over, for, while I spoke, the boats, and all they contained, were driving out of sight. However, the slanting position the ship had taken would afford us present protection from the water; and the stern, under which was the cabin that held all that was dear to me on earth, had been driven upwards between two rocks, and seemed immovably fixed. At the same time, in the distance southward, I saw through clouds and rain, several nooks of land, which, though rude and savage in appearance, were the objects of every hope I could form in this distressing moment.

It was my duty to appear serene before my family. "Courage, dear ones," cried I on entering their cabin; "let us not desert ourselves. I will not conceal from you that the ship is aground; but we are

at least in greater safety than if she were beating upon the rocks; our cabin is above water; and should the sea be more calm tomorrow, we may yet find means to reach the land in safety."

What I said appeased their fears; for my family had the habit of confiding in my assurances. They now began to feel the advantage of the ship's remaining still; for its motion had been most distressing, by jostling them one against another, or whatever happened to be nearest.

Soon after, night set in; the fury of the tempest had not abated; the planks and beams of the vessel separated in many parts with a horrible crash. We thought of the boats, and feared that all they contained must have sunk under the foaming surge.

My wife had prepared a slender meal, and the four boys partook of it with an appetite to which their parents were strangers. Three of them went to bed, and soon were snoring soundly. Fritz, the eldest, sat up with us. "I have been thinking," said he, after a long silence, "how it may be possible to save ourselves. If we had some bladders or cork-jackets for my mother and my brothers, you and I, father, would soon contrive to swim to land."

"That is a good thought," said I; "we will see what can be done."

Fritz and I looked about for some small empty casks; these we tied two and two together with handkerchiefs or towels, leaving about a foot dis-

tance between them, and fastened them as swimming jackets under the arms of each child, my wife at the same time preparing one for herself. We provided ourselves with knives, some string, some sods of peat, and other necessaries which could be put into the pocket, proceeding upon the hope that, if the ship went to pieces in the night, we should either be able to swim to land, or be driven thither by the waves.

Fritz, who had been up all night, now lay down near his brothers, and was soon asleep; but their mother and I, too anxious to close our eyes, kept watch, listening to every sound that seemed to threaten a further change in our situation. We hailed with joy the first gleam of light which shot through a small opening of the window. The raging of the winds had begun to abate, the sky was become serene, and hope throbbed in my bosom, as I beheld the sun already tinging the horizon. Thus revived, I summoned my wife and the boys to the deck.

The youngest children, half forgetful of the past, asked with surprise why we were there alone, and what had become of the ship's company? I led them to the recollection of our misfortune, and then added, "Dearest children, a Being more powerful than man has helped us, and will, no doubt, continue to help us, if we do not despair. But let us show ourselves willing, and each labor according to his strength."

Fritz advised that we should all throw ourselves

into the sea, while it was calm, and swim to land. "Ah! that may be well enough for you," said Ernest, "for you can swim; but we others should soon be drowned. Would it not be better to make a float of rafts, and get to land all together upon it?"

"Vastly well," answered I, "if we had the means for contriving such a float, and if, after all, it were not a dangerous sort of conveyance. But come, my boys, look each of you about the ship, and see what can be done to enable us to reach the land."

They now all sprang from me with eager looks, to do as I desired. I, on my part, lost no time in examining what we had to depend upon as to provisions and fresh water. My wife and the youngest boy visited the animals, whom they found in a pitiable condition, nearly perishing with hunger and thirst. Fritz repaired to the ammunition room; Ernest to the carpenter's cabin; and Jack to the apartment of the captain; but scarcely had he opened the door, when two large dogs sprang upon him, and saluted him with rude affection. Hunger had rendered the poor creatures so gentle that they licked his hands and face, uttering all the time a low sort of moan, and continuing their caresses. Jack gently took the largest dog by the ears, sprang upon his back, and with great gravity presented himself thus mounted before me, as I came out of the ship's hold. I could not keep from laughing, and I praised his courage.

By and by my little company were again assembled round me, and each boasted of what he had to contribute. Fritz had two fowling pieces, some powder and small shot, contained in horn flasks, and some bullets in bags.

Ernest produced his hat filled with nails, and held in his hands a hatchet and a hammer; in addition, a pair of pincers, a pair of large scissors, and an auger peeped out at his pockethole.

Even the little Francis carried under his arm a box of no very small size, from which he eagerly produced some little sharp-pointed hooks. His brothers smiled scornfully. "The youngest," said I, "has brought the most valuable prize. These are fishing hooks, and will probably be of more use in preserving our lives than all we may find besides in the ship. In justice, however, I must confess, that what Fritz and Ernest have found will also afford useful service."

"I, for my part," said my wife, "have brought nothing; but I have some good news. I have found on board a cow and an ass, two goats, six sheep, and a sow big with young; I have just supplied them with food and water, and I reckon on being able to preserve their lives."

"All this is admirable," said I to my young laborers; "and there is only master Jack, who, instead of thinking of something useful, has done us the favor to present us two personages, who, no

doubt, will be willing to eat more than we shall have to give them."

"Ah!" replied Jack, "but if we can once get to land, you will see that they will assist us in hunting and shooting."

"True enough," said I, "but be so good as to tell us how we are to get to land."

"I am sure it cannot be very difficult," said Jack. "Look here at these large tubs. Why cannot each of us get into one of them, and float to the land?"

"Everyone's thought is good for something," cried I, "and I begin to believe that what Jack has suggested is worth a trial. Quick, then, boy! give me the saw, the auger, and some nails; we will see what is to be done." I recollected having seen some empty casks in the ship's hold; we went down, and found them floating in the water which had got into the vessel; it cost us but little trouble to hoist them up, and place them on the lower deck, which was at this time scarcely above water. They were all sound, well guarded by iron hoops, and in good condition. I instantly began to saw them in two. In a short time I had produced eight little tubs, of equal size, which I viewed with delight. I was surprised to see that my wife sighed deeply as she looked at them. "Never, never," cried she, "can I venture to get into one of these."

"Do not decide so hastily, my dear," said I; "my plan is not yet complete."

When we had finished, we found that we had produced a kind of narrow boat

I then sought for a long pliant plank, and placed my eight tubs upon it, leaving a piece at each end reaching beyond the tubs, which, bent upward, would present an outline like the keel of a vessel; we next nailed all the tubs to the plank, and then the tubs to each other, as they stood, side by side, to make them the firmer, and afterwards two other planks, of the same length as the first, on each side of the tubs. When all this was finished, we found we had produced a kind of narrow boat, divided into eight compartments, which I had no doubt would be able to perform a short course in calm water.

But now we discovered that the machine we had contrived was so heavy, that, with the strength of all united, we were not able to move it an inch from its place. I bade Fritz fetch me a crowbar. In the meanwhile, I sawed a thick, round pole into several pieces, to make some rollers. I then, with the crowbar, easily raised the foremost part of my machine, while Fritz placed one of the rollers under it.

"How astonishing," cried Ernest, "that this tool, which is smaller than any of us, can do more than our united strength was able to effect! I wish I could know how it is constructed."

I explained to him as well as I could the power of Archimedes' lever, with which he said he could move the world, if you would give him a point to stand on. I next tied a long cord to the stern of my boat, and the other end of it to one of the timbers

of the ship, which appeared to be still firm, so that the cord being left loose would serve to guide and restrain it when launched. We now put a second and a third roller under, and applied the crowbar. To our great joy our machine descended into the water. But now a new difficulty presented itself; the boat leaned so much on one side that the boys all exclaimed they could not venture to get into it. I was for some moments in the most painful perplexity; but it suddenly occurred to me that ballast only was wanting to set it straight. I drew it near, and threw all the useless things I could find into the tubs, so as to make weight on the light side. By degrees the boat became quite straight and firm in the water.

I next set to work to make paddles. I took two poles of equal length, upon which the sails of the vessel had been stretched, and, having descended into the boat, fixed one of them at the head, and the other at the stern, in such a manner as to enable us to turn them at pleasure to right or left, as should best answer the purpose of guiding and putting it out to sea. I stuck the end of each paddle into the bunghole of an empty keg, which served to keep the paddles steady.

By the time we had found some oars, it was late; and as it would not have been possible to reach the land that evening, we were obliged to pass a second night in the wrecked vessel, which at every

instant threatened to fall to pieces. We next refreshed ourselves by a regular meal; for, during the day's work, we had scarcely allowed ourselves to take a bit of bread, or a glass of wine. Being now in a more tranquil state of mind than the day before, we all lay down to sleep; not, however, till I had taken the precaution of tying the swimming apparatus around my three youngest boys and my wife, in case the storm should again come on. I also advised my wife to dress herself in the clothes of one of the sailors, which were more convenient for swimming or any other exertions. She left us to look for some that might best suit her size. In a quarter of an hour she returned, dressed in the clothes of a young man who had served as volunteer on board the ship. She joined in the merriment her dress occasioned, and one and all crept into our separate hammocks.

## CHAPTER II

# A LANDING

BY break of day we were all awake and alert. When we had finished our morning prayer, I said, "We now must enter upon the work of our deliverance. The first thing to be done is to give to each poor animal on board a hearty meal; we will then put food enough before them for several days; we cannot take them with us; but we will hope it may be possible, if our voyage succeeds, to return and fetch them. Are you now all ready? Bring together whatever is absolutely necessary for our wants. It is my wish that our first cargo should consist of a barrel of gunpowder, three fowling pieces, and three carbines, with as much small shot and lead, and as many bullets as our boat will carry; two pairs of pocket pistols, and one of large ones, not forgetting a mold to cast balls in; each of the boys, and their mother also, should have a bag to carry game in; you will find plenty of these in the cabins of the officers."

We added a chest containing cakes of portable soup, another full of hard biscuits, an iron pot, a fishing rod, a chest of nails, and another of different tools, such as hammers, saws, pincers, hatchets, and

augers, and, lastly, some sail cloth to make a tent. Indeed the boys brought so many things that we were obliged to reject some of them, though I exchanged most of them for the worthless ballast.

When all was ready, we stepped bravely each into a tub. At the moment of our departure, the cocks and hens began to cluck a sorrowful adieu. This suggested to me the idea of taking the geese, ducks, fowls, and pigeons with us; observing to my wife that if we could not find means to feed them, at least they would feed us.

Accordingly, we put ten hens and an old and a young cock into one of the tubs, and covered it with planks. We set the rest of the poultry at liberty, in the hope that instinct would direct them toward the land, the geese and the ducks by water, and the pigeons by the air.

When my wife joined us, she was loaded with a large bag, which she threw into the tub that already contained her youngest son. I imagined that she intended it for him to sit upon, or perhaps to prevent his being tossed from side to side. I therefore asked no questions concerning it.

The order of our departure was as follows: In the first tub, at the boat's head, my wife placed herself. In the second was our little Francis, a lovely boy, eight years old, remarkable for the sweetest and happiest temper, and for his affection to his parents. In the third sat Fritz, our eldest boy, between four-

teen and fifteen years of age, a handsome, curl-pated youth, full of intelligence and vivacity. In the fourth was the barrel of gunpowder, with the cocks and hens, and the sail cloth; and in the fifth, the provisions of every kind. In the sixth was our third son, Jack, a light-hearted, enterprising, audacious, generous lad, about ten years old; and in the seventh, our second son, Ernest, a boy of twelve years old, of a rational, reflecting temper, well informed for his age, but somewhat disposed to indolence and pleasure. In the eighth, a father had in his care the task of guiding the boat for the safety of his beloved family. Each of us had useful implements within reach; the hand of each held an oar, and near each was a swimming apparatus, in readiness for what might happen.

The tide was already at half its height when we left the ship, and I had counted on this circumstance as favorable to our want of strength. The boys devoured with their eyes the blue land they saw at a distance. We rowed with all our strength. The two dogs, perceiving we had abandoned them, plunged into the sea and swam to the boat; they were too large for us to think of giving them admittance, and I dreaded lest they should jump in and upset us. Turk was an English dog, and Flora of the Danish breed. I was in great uneasiness on their account, for I feared it would not be possible for them to swim so far. The dogs, however, man-

aged the affair with perfect intelligence. When fatigued, they rested their fore paws on one of the paddles, and thus with little effort proceeded.

Our voyage proceeded securely, though slowly; but the nearer we approached the land, the more gloomy and unpromising its aspect appeared. The coast was clothed with barren rocks, which seemed to offer nothing but hunger and distress. The sea was calm; the waves gently washed the shore, and the sky was serene in every direction; we perceived casks, bales, chests, and other vestiges of shipwreck floating round us. In the hope of obtaining some good provisions, I determined on endeavoring to secure some of the casks. I bade Fritz have a rope, a hammer, and some nails ready, and to try to seize them as we passed. He succeeded in laying hold of two, and in such a way that we could draw them after us to the shore.

Now that we were close on land, its rude outline was much softened; the rocks no longer appeared one undivided chain; Fritz, with his hawk's eye, already descried some trees, and exclaimed that they were palm trees. Ernest expressed his joy that he should now get much larger and better coconuts than he had ever seen before. I, for my part, was regretting that I had not thought of bringing a telescope that I knew was in the captain's cabin, when Jack drew a small one from his pocket, and with a look of triumph presented it to me.

On applying it to my eye, I remarked that the shore before us had a desert and savage aspect, but that toward the left the scene was more agreeable; but when I attempted to steer in that direction, a current carried me toward the coast that was rocky and barren. By and by we perceived a little opening between the rocks, near the mouth of a creek, toward which all our geese and ducks betook themselves; and I, relying on their wisdom, followed in the same course. This opening formed a little bay; the water was tranquil, and neither too deep nor too shallow to receive our boat. I entered it, and cautiously put on shore.

All that had life in the boat jumped eagerly on land. The dogs, who had swum on shore, received us, as if appointed to do the honors of the place, jumping round us with every demonstration of joy; the geese kept up a loud cackling, to which the ducks, from their broad yellow beaks, contributed a perpetual bass; the cocks and hens, which we had already set at liberty, clucked; the boys chattered all at once, producing altogether an overpowering confusion of sounds. To this was added the disagreeable scream of some flamingoes, which we now perceived flying over our heads.

The first thing we did on finding ourselves safe on land, was to fall on our knees, and return thanks to the Supreme Being, who had preserved our lives.

We next looked about for a convenient place to

set up a tent under the shade of the rocks; and having all consulted and agreed upon a place, we set to work. We drove one of our poles horizontally into a cleft of the rock; this rested upon another pole, driven perpendicularly into the ground, and formed the ridge of our tent. A frame for a dwelling was thus made secure. We next threw some sail cloth over the ridge, and stretching it to a convenient distance on each side, fastened its ends to the ground with stakes. Lastly, I fixed some hooks along the edge of one side of the sail cloth in front, that we might be able to enclose the entrance during the night. The chests of provisions, and other heavy matters, we had left on the shore. The next thing was to desire my sons to look about for grass and moss, to be spread and dried in the sun, to serve us for beds.

During this occupation, I erected near the tent a kind of little kitchen. A few flat stones I found in the bed of a fresh-water river served for a hearth. I got a quantity of dry branches; with the largest I made a small enclosure round the hearth, and with the little twigs added to some of our peat, I made a brisk, cheering fire. We put some of the soup cakes, with water, into our iron pot, and placed it over the flame; and my wife, with my little Francis for a scullion, took charge of preparing the dinner.

In the meanwhile, Fritz had been reloading the guns, with one of which he had wandered along the

side of the river. He had proposed to Ernest to accompany him; but Ernest replied that he did not like a rough, stony walk, and that he should go to the seashore. Jack took the road toward a chain of rocks which jutted out into the sea, with the intention of gathering some of the mussels which grew upon them.

My own occupation was now an endeavor to draw the two floating casks on shore, but I could not succeed; for our place of landing, though convenient enough for our boat, was too steep for the casks. While I was looking about to find a more favorable spot, I heard loud cries proceeding from a short distance, and recognized the voice of my son Jack. I snatched my hatchet, and ran anxiously to his assistance. I soon perceived him up to his knees in water in a shallow, where a large lobster had fastened its claws in his leg. The poor boy screamed pitiably, and made useless efforts to disengage himself. I jumped instantly into the water; and the enemy was no sooner sensible of my approach than he let go his hold, and would have scampered out to sea, but that I turned quickly upon him, took him up by the body, and carried him off, followed by Jack, who shouted our triumph all the way. He begged me at last to let him hold the animal in his own hand, that he might himself present so fine a booty to his mother. Accordingly, having observed how I held it, he laid his own hand upon it in exactly

the same manner; but scarcely had he grasped it, than he received a violent blow on the face from the lobster's tail, which made him loose his hold, and the animal fell to the ground. Jack again began to bawl out, while I could not refrain from laughing heartily. In his rage he took up a stone, and killed the lobster with a single blow.

Ernest, ever prompted by his savory tooth, cried out that the lobster had better be put into the soup, which would give it an excellent flavor: but this mother opposed, observing that the lobster of itself would furnish a dinner for the whole family. I now left them for another attempt upon my two casks, and at length succeeded in getting them into the shallow, and in fixing them there securely.

On my return, I complimented Jack on his being the first to procure an animal that might serve for food.

"Ah, but *I* have seen something too, that is good to eat," said Ernest; "and I should have got it if it had not been in the water, so that I must have wetted my feet——"

"Oh, that is a famous story," cried Jack. "I can tell you what he saw, some nasty mussels! Why, I would not eat one of them for the world. Think of my lobster!"

"That is not true, Jack; for they were oysters, and not mussels, that I saw. I am sure of it, for they stuck to the rock, and I know they must be oysters."

"Well, my dainty gentleman," interrupted I, addressing myself to Ernest; "since you are so well acquainted with the place where such food can be found, you will be so obliging as to return and procure us some. In such a situation as ours, every member of the family must be actively employed for the common good; and, above all, none must be afraid of so trifling an inconvenience as wet feet."

"I will do my best, with all my heart," answered Ernest; "and at the same time I will bring home some salt, of which I have seen immense quantities in the holes of the rocks, where I suppose it is dried by the sun. I tasted some of it, and it was excellent."

He set off, and soon returned; what he brought had the appearance of sea salt, but was so mixed with earth and sand, that I was on the point of throwing it away; but my wife prevented me, and by dissolving it, and afterwards filtering it through a piece of muslin, we found it admirably fit for use.

"Why could we not have used some sea water," asked Jack, "instead of having all this trouble?"

"So we might," answered I, "if it had not a somewhat sickly taste." While I was speaking, my wife tasted the soup with a little stick with which she had been stirring it, and pronounced that it was all the better for the salt, and now quite ready. "But," said she, "Fritz is not come in. And then, how shall we manage to eat our soup without spoons

or dishes? Why did we not remember to bring some from the ship?"

"Because, my dear, one cannot think of everything at once. We shall be lucky if we have not forgotten even more important things."

"But, indeed," said she, "this is a matter which cannot easily be set to rights. How will it be possible for each of us to raise this large boiling pot to his lips?"

I soon saw that my wife was right. We all cast our eyes upon the pot with a sort of stupid perplexity. Silence was at length broken by our all bursting into a hearty laugh at our want of every kind of utensil.

Ernest observed that if we could but get some of the nice coconuts he often thought about, we might empty them, and use the pieces of the shells for spoons.

"Yes, yes," replied I; "*if we could but get*, but we have them not; and if wishing were to any purpose, I had as soon wish at once for a dozen silver spoons; but, alas! of what use is wishing?"

"But at least," said the boy, "we can use some oyster shells for spoons."

"Why, this is well, Ernest," said I, "and is what I call a useful thought. Run then quickly for some of them."

Jack ran first, and was up to his knees in the water before Ernest could reach the place. Jack tore

off the oysters with eagerness, and threw them to slothful Ernest, who put them into his handkerchief.

Fritz not having yet returned, his mother was beginning to be uneasy, when we heard him shouting to us from a small distance. In a few minutes he was among us, his two hands behind him, and with a sort of would-be melancholy air, which none of us could well understand.

"What have you brought?" asked his brothers; "let us see your booty, and you shall see ours."

"Ah! I have unfortunately nothing."

"What! nothing at all?" said I.

"Nothing at all," answered he.

But now, on fixing my eye upon him, I perceived a smile of proud success through his assumed dissatisfaction. At the same instant Jack, having stolen behind him, exclaimed, "A sucking pig! a sucking pig!" Fritz, finding his trick discovered, now proudly displayed his prize, which I immediately perceived, from the description I had read in different books of travels, was an agouti, a rabbit-like animal common in that country.

Fritz related that he had passed over to the other side of the river. "Ah!" continued he, "it is quite another thing from this place; the shore is low, and you can have no notion of the quantity of casks, chests, planks, and different sorts of things washed there by the sea. Ought we not to go and try to obtain some of these treasures?"

"We will consider of it soon," answered I, "but first we have to make our voyage to the vessel, and fetch away the animals: at least you will all agree, that of the cow we are pretty much in want."

"If our biscuit were soaked in milk, it would not be so hard," observed our dainty Ernest.

"I must tell you, too," continued Fritz, "that over on the other side there is as much grass for pasturage as we can desire; and besides, a wood, in the shade of which we could repose. Why then should we remain on this barren desert side?"

"Patience," replied I; "there is a time for everything, friend Fritz; we shall not be without something to undertake tomorrow, and even after tomorrow. But, above all, I am eager to know if you discovered, in your excursion, any traces of our ship companions?"

"Not the smallest trace of man, dead or alive, on land or water," replied Fritz.

Soon after we had taken our meal, the sun began to sink into the west. Our little flock of fowls assembled round us, pecking here and there what morsels of our biscuit had fallen on the ground. Just at this moment my wife produced the bag she had so mysteriously huddled into the tub. Its mouth was now opened; it contained the various sorts of grain for feeding poultry—barley, peas, and oats—and also different kinds of seeds and roots of vegetables for the table. In the fulness of her kind heart

she scattered several handfuls at once upon the ground, which the fowls began eagerly to seize. Our pigeons sought a roosting place among the rocks; the hens, with the two cocks at their head, ranged themselves in a line along the ridge of the tent; and the geese and ducks betook themselves in a body, cackling and quacking as they proceeded, to a marshy bit of ground near the sea, where some thick bushes afforded them shelter.

A little later, we began to follow the example of our winged companions, by beginning our preparations for repose. First, we loaded our guns and pistols, and laid them carefully in the tent; next, we assembled together and joined in offering up our thanks to the Almighty. With the last ray of the sun, we entered our tent, and, after drawing the sail cloth over the hooks, to close the entrance, we laid ourselves down close to each other on the grass and moss we had collected in the morning.

## CHAPTER III

# A VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY

I WAS roused at the dawn of day by the crowing of the cocks. I intended that day to seek for traces of our late ship companions, and at the same time to examine the nature of the soil on the other side of the river. My wife courageously consented to my proposal of leaving her with the three youngest boys, and proceeding myself with Fritz on a journey of discovery.

The children were soon roused; even our lazy Ernest submitted to the hard fate of rising so early in the morning.

We now prepared for our departure. We took each a bag for game, and a hatchet; I put a pair of pistols in the leather band round Fritz's waist, in addition to the gun, and provided myself with the same articles, not forgetting a stock of biscuit and a flask of fresh river water. My wife now called us to breakfast, when all attacked the lobster; but its flesh proved so hard that there was a great deal left when our meal was finished, and we packed it for our journey without further regret from anyone.

In about an hour we had completed the preparations for our journey. I had loaded the guns we

left behind, and I now enjoined my wife to keep by day as near the boat as possible, which in case of danger was the best and most speedy means of escape.

The banks of the river were everywhere steep and difficult, excepting at one narrow slip near the mouth on our side, where we had drawn our fresh water. The other side presented an unbroken line of sharp, high, perpendicular rocks. We therefore followed the course of the river till we arrived at a cluster of rocks at which the stream formed a cascade: a few paces beyond, we found some large fragments of rock which had fallen into the bed of the river: by stepping upon these, and making now and then some hazardous leaps, we contrived to reach the other side. We proceeded a short way along the rock, forcing ourselves a passage through the tall grass.

When we had walked about a hundred paces, we heard a loud noise behind us, as if we were pursued, and perceived a rustling motion in the grass, which was almost as tall as ourselves. I was a good deal alarmed, thinking that it might be occasioned by some frightful serpent, a tiger, or other ferocious animal. Our alarm was, however, short; for what was our joy on seeing rush out, not an enemy, but our faithful Turk, whom we had forgotten.

We again pursued our way. On our left was the sea, and on our right the continuation of the ridge of rocks which began at the place of our landing, and

ran along the shore, the summit everywhere adorned with fresh verdure and a great variety of trees.

When we had gone about two leagues, we entered a wood situated a little farther from the sea. Here we threw ourselves on the ground, under the shade of a tree, by the side of a clear running stream, took out some provisions and refreshed ourselves. We heard the chirping, singing, and motion of birds in the trees, and observed, as they now and then came out to view, that they were more attractive by their splendid plumage than by any charm of note. Fritz assured me that he had caught a glimpse of some animals like apes among the bushes, and this was confirmed by the restless movements of Turk, who began to smell about him, and to bark so loud that the wood resounded with the noise. Fritz stole softly about to be sure, and presently stumbled on a small round body which lay on the ground. He brought it to me, observing that it must be the nest of some bird.

"What makes you of that opinion?" said I. "It is, I think, much more like a coconut."

"But I have read that there are some kinds of birds which build their nests quite round; and look, father, how the outside is crossed and twined."

"But do you not perceive that what you take for straws crossed and twined by the beak of a bird is, in fact, a coat of fibers formed by the hand of Nature? Let us break the shell, and you will see the nut inside."

We soon accomplished this; but the nut, alas! from lying on the ground, had perished, and appeared but little different from a bit of dried skin.

A little later we had the good luck to meet with another nut. We opened it, and finding it sound, we sat down and ate it for our dinner. The nut, it is true, was a little oily and rancid; yet we made a hearty meal, and then continued our route. We pushed our way across the wood, being often obliged to cut a path through the bushes with our hatchet.

Suddenly I heard a sharp exclamation from Fritz, whose sharp eye was continually on a journey of discovery. "Oh, heavens! father," he cried, "what odd trees, with wens growing all about their trunks!" I had soon the surprise and satisfaction of assuring him that they were bottle gourds, the trunks of which bear fruit. "Try to get down one of them," I said, "and we will examine it minutely."

"I have got one," cried Fritz, "and it is exactly like a gourd, only the rind is thicker and harder."

"It then, like the rind of that fruit, can be used for making various utensils," observed I, "plates, dishes, basins, flasks. We will give it the name of the gourd tree."

Fritz jumped for joy. "How happy my mother will be!" cried he in ecstasy; "she will no longer have the vexation of thinking, when she makes soup, that we shall all scald our fingers."

We accordingly proceeded to the manufacture of our plates and dishes. I taught my son how to divide the gourd with a bit of string, which would cut more equally than a knife; I tied the string round the middle of the gourd as tight as possible, striking it pretty hard with the handle of my knife, and I drew it tighter and tighter till the gourd fell apart, forming two regular-shaped bowls or vessels; while Fritz, who had used a knife for the same operation, had entirely spoiled his gourd by the irregular pressure of his instrument. I recommended his making some spoons with the spoiled rind, as it was good for no other purpose. I, on my part, had soon completed two dishes of convenient size, and some smaller ones to serve as plates.

Fritz was in the utmost astonishment at my success. "I cannot imagine, father," said he, "how this way of cutting the gourd could occur to you!"

"I have read the description of such a process," replied I, "in books of travel."

Fritz had completed some plates, and was not a little proud of the achievement. "Ah, how delighted my mother will be to eat upon them!" cried he. "But how shall we convey them to her? They will not, I fear, bear traveling well."

"We must leave them here on the sand for the sun to dry them thoroughly; this will be accomplished by the time of our return this way, and we can then carry them with us; but care must be taken to fill

It was in vain that we used our telescope in all directions; no trace of man appeared

them with sand, that they may not shrink or warp in the heat." Our porcelain was accordingly spread upon the ground, and for the present abandoned to its fate.

We amused ourselves, as we proceeded, in endeavoring to fashion some spoons from the fragments of the gourd rinds.

Meanwhile, we had not neglected the great object of our pursuit—the search for our ship companions. But our endeavors, alas! were all in vain.

After a walk of about four leagues in all, we arrived at a spot where a slip of rising land reached far out into the sea. We determined to ascend it, concluding we should obtain a clear view of all parts.

From the top of the hill we beheld a scene of wild and solitary beauty, over a vast extent of land and water. It was, however, in vain that we used our telescope in all directions; no trace of man appeared. The shore, rounded by a bay, with a promontory on the farther side; the blue tint of the water; the sea, in whose waves the rays of the sun were reflected; the woods, of variegated hues and verdure, formed altogether a picture of magnificence and of new and exquisite delight. But the recollection of our unfortunate companions, engulfed perhaps in this very ocean, depressed our spirits. From this moment we began to lose even the feeble hope we had entertained, and sadness stole into our hearts.

We descended the hill, and made our way to a wood of palms; our path was clothed with reeds, entwined with other plants, which greatly obstructed our march. We advanced slowly and cautiously, fearing at every step to receive a mortal bite from some serpent that might be concealed among them. We made Turk go before, to give us timely notice of anything dangerous. I also cut a reedstalk of uncommon length and thickness, for my defense against any enemy. It was not without surprise that I perceived a sticky sap proceed from the divided end of the stalk. I tasted this liquid, and found it sweet and of a pleasant flavor, so that not a doubt remained that we were passing through a plantation of sugar canes. I again applied the cane to my lips, sucked it for some moments, and felt singularly refreshed and strengthened.

I determined not to tell Fritz immediately of the fortunate discovery I had made, preferring that he should find it out for himself. As he was at some distance before me, I called out to him to cut a reed for his defense. This he did, and without any remark, used it simply for a stick, striking lustily with it on all sides to clear a passage. The motion occasioned the sap to run out abundantly upon his hand, and he stopped and tasted what was on his fingers. "Father, father, I have found some sugar!" he cried. "I have a sugar cane in my hand! Run quickly, father!"

Fritz cut at least a dozen of the largest canes, tore off their leaves, tied them together, and putting them under his arm, dragged them, as well as he was able, through thick and thin to the end of the plantation. In the wood of palms we stretched our limbs in the shade, when a great number of large monkeys, terrified by the sight of us and the barking of Turk, stole nimbly and quietly up the trees. From this height they fixed their eyes upon us, grinding their teeth, making horrible grimaces, and saluting us with hostile screams. Being now satisfied that the trees were palms, bearing coconuts, I conceived the hope of obtaining some of this fruit through the monkeys. I therefore began to throw some stones at them.

The animals showed every mark of anger. With their accustomed trick of imitation, they furiously tore off, nut by nut, all that grew upon the trunk near them, to hurl them down upon us, so that it was with difficulty we avoided the blows; and in a short time a great number of coconuts lay on the ground round us. Fritz laughed heartily at the excellent success of our trick; and, as the shower of coconuts began to subside, we set about collecting them. We chose a place where we could repose at our ease, to feast on this rich harvest. We opened the shells with a hatchet. The milk of the coconut has not a pleasant flavor; but it is excellent for quenching thirst. What we liked best was a kind of

solid cream which adheres to the shell, and which we scraped off with our spoons.

Our meal being finished, we prepared to leave the wood of palms. I tied all the coconuts which had stalks together, and threw them across my shoulder. Fritz resumed his bundle of sugar canes. We divided the rest of the things between us, and continued our way toward home.

## CHAPTER IV

# AN ALARM BY NIGHT

MY poor boy now began to complain of fatigue; the sugar canes galled his shoulders, and he was obliged to shift them often. At last he stopped to take breath. "No," cried he, "I never could have thought that a few sugar canes could be so heavy. How sincerely I pity the poor negroes who carry heavy loads of them! Yet how glad I shall be when my mother and Ernest are tasting them!"

When we reached the place where we had left our gourd utensils upon the sands, we found them perfectly dry, as hard as bone, and not the least misshapen. We now, therefore, could put them into our game bags conveniently enough. Scarcely had we passed through the little wood in which we breakfasted, when Turk sprang away to seize upon a troop of monkeys, who were skipping about and amusing themselves without observing our approach. They were thus taken by surprise; and before we could get to the spot, our ferocious Turk had already seized one of them; it was a female who held a young one in her arms. The poor creature was killed; the young one hid himself in the grass. Fritz

flew like lightning to make Turk let go his hold, but all in vain; he was too late to prevent the death of the mother.

The next scene that presented itself was comical enough. The young monkey sprang nimbly on Fritz's shoulders, and fastened his feet in the stiff curls of his hair; nor could the squalls of Fritz, nor all the shaking he gave him, make him let go his hold. I ran to them, laughing heartily, for I saw that the animal was too young to do him any injury.

With a little gentleness and management I succeeded in taking the creature in my arms as one would an infant, nor could I help pitying and caressing him. He was not larger than a kitten, and quite unable to help himself; the mother was at least as tall as Fritz.

"What shall I do with thee, poor orphan?" cried I; "and how, in our condition, shall I be able to maintain thee? We have already more mouths to fill than food to put into them, and our workmen are too young to afford us much hope from their exertions."

"Father," cried Fritz, "do let me have this little animal to myself. I will take the greatest care of him; I will give him all my share of the milk of the coconuts, till we get our cows and goats; and who knows? His monkey instinct may one day assist us in discovering some wholesome fruits."

"I have not the least objection," answered I. "You have conducted yourself like a lad of courage, and I am well satisfied with your behavior."

We now thought of resuming our journey. The little orphan jumped again on the shoulders of his protector, while I on my part relieved my boy of the bundle of canes. Scarcely had we proceeded a quarter of a league when Turk overtook us full gallop. The young monkey appeared uneasy from seeing him so near. Fritz tied some string round Turk's body and fastened the monkey on his back. Then, in a tone of genuine pity, he said, "Now, Mr. Turk, since you had the cruelty to destroy the mother, it is for you to take care of her child." At first the dog resisted; but finally he consented to carry the little burden. Fritz put another string round Turk's neck, by which he might lead him, to prevent him from going out of sight.

We soon found ourselves on the bank of the river, and near our family. Flora from the other side announced our approach by a violent barking, and Turk replied so heartily that his motions unseated his little burden, who in his fright jumped the length of his string from his back to Fritz's shoulder. Turk, who began to be acquainted with the country, ran off to meet his companion, and shortly after, our much loved family appeared in sight.

I gave my wife an account of our journey and our new possessions, which I exhibited one after the other

for her inspection. No one of them afforded her more pleasure than the plates and dishes. We now adjourned to our kitchen. On one side of the fire was a turnspit, which my wife had contrived by driving two forked pieces of wood into the ground, and placing a long even stick, sharpened at one end, across them. By this invention she was enabled to roast fish, or other food, with the help of little Francis, who was intrusted with the care of turning it round from time to time. She had prepared us the treat of a goose, the fat of which ran down into some oyster shells placed there to serve the purpose of a dripping pan. There was, besides, a dish of fish, which the little ones had caught; and the iron pot was upon the fire, provided with a good soup, the odor of which increased our appetite. One of the casks which we had recovered from the sea had been opened, showing a cargo of the finest sort of Dutch cheeses, contained in round tins.

We seated ourselves on the ground. My wife had placed each article of the meal in one of our neat new dishes. My sons had not patience to wait, but had broken the coconuts, and already convinced themselves of their delicious flavor; and then they fell to making spoons with the fragments of the shells.

The boys were preparing to break some more of the nuts with the hatchet, when I pronounced the word *halt,* and bade them bring me a saw. The

thought had struck me that, by dividing the nuts carefully with this instrument, the two halves, when scooped, would remain in the form of teacups or basins already made to our hands. Jack, who was on every occasion the most active, brought me the saw, and in a short time each of us was provided with a convenient receptacle for food.

By the time we had finished our meal, the sun was setting. My wife had considerately collected a large quantity of dry grass, which she had spread in the tent, so that we anticipated with joy the prospect of stretching our limbs on a substance somewhat approaching to the quality of mattresses, while, the night before, our bodies seemed to touch the ground. Our flock of fowls placed themselves as they had done the preceding evening: we said our prayers, and lay down in the tent, taking the young monkey with us, who was become the little favorite of all.

I was soon awakened by the motion of the fowls on the ridge of the tent, and by a violent barking of the dogs. I was instantly on my legs: my wife and Fritz got up also; we each took a gun, and sallied forth.

The dogs continued barking with the same violence, and at intervals even howled. We had not proceeded many steps from the tent, when, to our surprise, we perceived by the light of the moon a terrible combat. At least a dozen of jackals had surrounded our brave dogs, who defended themselves

with the stoutest courage. Already they had laid three or four of their adversaries on the ground, while those which remained began a timid kind of moan, as if imploring pity and forbearance. Meanwhile they did not the less endeavor to entangle and surprise the dogs, thus thrown off their guard.

I, for my part, had feared something worse than jackals. "We shall soon manage to set these gentlemen at rest," said I. "Let us fire both together, my boy; but let us take care how we aim, for fear of killing the dogs; mind how you fire, that you may not miss, and I shall do the same." We fired, and two of the intruders fell instantly dead upon the sands. The others made their escape.

The body of one of the jackals was left on the rock, by the side of the tent in which were the little sleepers, who had not once awaked. Having, therefore, nothing further to prevent us, we lay down by their side till day began to break, and till the cocks, with their shrill morning song, awoke us both.

## CHAPTER V

# THE RETURN TO THE WRECK

I BROKE a silence of some moments, by saying to my wife that I could not but view with alarm the many cares and exertions to be made. "In the first place, a journey to the vessel. This is of absolute necessity if we would not be deprived of the cattle and other useful things, all of which we risk losing by the first heavy sea. But should we not first contrive a better sort of dwelling, and a more secure retreat from wild beasts? I own I am at a loss what to begin first."

"All will fall into the right order by degrees," observed my wife. "I cannot, I confess, help shuddering at the thought of this voyage to the vessel; but if you judge it to be of absolute necessity, it cannot be undertaken too soon. In the meanwhile, nothing that is under my own care shall stand still, I promise you. Let us not be over-anxious about tomorrow: sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof."

"I will follow your advice," said I, "and without further loss of time. You shall stay here with the three youngest boys; and Fritz, being so much stronger and more intelligent than the others, shall accompany me in the undertaking."

At this moment I started from my bed, crying out briskly, "Get up, children, get up; it is almost light. It would be a shame for the sun to find us still sleeping, we who are to be the founders of a new colony!"

At these words Fritz sprang nimbly out of the tent and ran to visit his jackal, which during the night had become cold and perfectly stiff. He fixed him upon his legs, and placed him like a sentinel at the entrance of the tent, joyously anticipating the wonder and exclamations of his brothers at so unexpected an appearance. But no sooner had the dogs caught sight of him, than they began a howl, and set themselves in motion to fall upon him instantly, thinking he was alive. Fritz had enough to do to restrain them, and succeeded only by dint of coaxing and perseverance.

In the meantime, their barking had awaked the younger boys, and they ran out of the tent. Jack was the first who appeared, with the young monkey on his shoulders; but when the little creature perceived the jackal, he sprang away in terror, hid himself at the farthest extremity of the grass which composed our bed, and covered himself with it so completely that scarcely could the tip of his nose be seen.

The children were much surprised at the sight of a yellow-colored animal standing without motion at the entrance of the tent.

"Oh, heavens!" exclaimed Francis, stepping back a few paces for fear, "it is a wolf!"

"No, no," said Jack, going near the jackal, and taking one of his paws, "it is a yellow dog, and he is dead; he does not move at all."

"It is neither a dog nor a wolf," interrupted Ernest importantly. "Do you not see that it is the golden fox?"

"Best of all, most learned professor!" now exclaimed Fritz. "So you can tell an agouti when you see him, but you cannot tell a jackal; for jackal is the creature you see before you, and I killed him myself in the night."

"In the night, Fritz? In your sleep, I suppose——"

"No, Mr. Ernest; not in my sleep, as you so good-naturedly suppose, but broad awake and on the watch to protect you from wild beasts! But I cannot wonder at this mistake in one who does not know the difference between a jackal and a golden fox!"

"You would not have known it either if papa had not told you——"

"Come, come, my lads, I will have no disputes," interrupted I. "Fritz, you are to blame in ridiculing your brother for the mistake he made. Ernest, you are also to blame for indulging that little peevishness of yours. But as to the animal, you all are right and all are wrong; for he partakes at once of the

nature of the dog, the wolf, and the fox." The boys in an instant became friends; and then followed questions, answers, and wonder in abundance.

The next thing thought of was breakfast, for the appetites of young boys open with their eyes. To-day their mother had nothing to give them for their morning meal but some biscuit, which was so hard and dry that it was with difficulty we could swallow it. Fritz asked for a piece of cheese to eat with it, and Ernest cast some searching looks on the second cask we had drawn out of the sea, to discover whether it also contained Dutch cheeses. In a minute he came up to us, joy sparkling in his eyes. "Father," said he, "if we had but a little butter spread upon our biscuit, do you not think it would improve it?"

"That indeed it would; but—*if*—*if;* these never-ending *ifs* are but a poor dependence. For my part, I had rather eat a bit of cheese with my biscuit at once, than think of *ifs*."

"Perhaps, though, the *ifs* may be worth something if we were to knock out the head of this cask."

"What cask, my boy? What are you talking of?"

"I am talking of this cask, which is filled with excellent salt butter. I made a little opening in it with a knife; and see, I got out enough to spread nicely upon this piece of biscuit."

"That glutton instinct of yours for once is of some general use," answered I. "But now let us profit by the event. Who will have some butter on

his biscuit?" The boys surrounded the cask in a moment, while I was in some perplexity as to the best method of getting at the contents. Fritz was for taking off the topmost hoop, and thus loosening one of the ends. But this I objected to, observing that the great heat of the sun would not fail to melt the butter, which would then run out, and be wasted. The idea occurred to me that I would make a hole in the bottom of the cask sufficiently large to take out a small quantity of butter at a time; and I set about manufacturing a little wooden shovel to use for the purpose. All this succeeded vastly well, and we sat down to breakfast, some biscuits and a cocoa-nut shell full of salt butter being placed upon the ground. We toasted our biscuit, and, while it was hot, applied the butter, and contrived to make a hearty breakfast.

"One of the things we must not forget to look for in the vessel," said Fritz, "is a spiked collar or two for our dogs, as a protection to them should they again be called upon to defend themselves from wild beasts, which I fear will probably be the case."

"Oh!" says Jack, "I can make spiked collars if my mother will give me a little help."

"That I will, my boy; for I should like to see what new fancy has come into your head," cried she.

"Yes, yes," pursued I, "as many new inventions as you please; you cannot better employ your time.

But now for work. You, Mr. Fritz, who, from your superior age and discretion, enjoy the high honor of being my privy counselor, must make haste and get yourself ready, and we will undertake today our voyage to the vessel, to bring away whatever may be possible. You younger boys will remain here, under the wing of your kind mother. I hope I need not mention that I rely on your perfect obedience to her will, and general good behavior."

While Fritz was getting the boat ready, I looked about for a pole, and tied a piece of white linen to the end of it. This I drove into the ground, in a place where it would be visible from the vessel; and I agreed with my wife that, in case of any accident that should require my prompt assistance, they should take down the pole and fire a gun three times as a signal of distress. But I gave her notice that, there being so many things to accomplish on board the vessel, it was probable that we should not, otherwise, return at night; in which case I, on my part, also promised to make signals.

We embarked in silence. Fritz rowed steadily, and I did my best to help him by rowing from time to time with the oar which served me for a rudder. When we had gone some distance, I remarked a current which was visible a long way. To take advantage of this current, and to save our strength by means of it, was my first care. Little as I knew of the sea, I succeeded in keeping our boat in the direc-

tion in which it ran, and we were drawn gently on, till at length the gradual lessening of its force obliged us again to take to our oars. A little afterwards we found ourselves safely arrived at the vessel, and fastened our boat securely to one of its timbers.

Fritz the first thing went to the main deck, where he found all the animals we had left on board assembled. I followed him, well pleased to observe the generous impatience he showed to relieve the wants of the poor creatures, who, one and all, now saluted us by the sounds natural to their species. We examined the food and water of the animals, taking away what was half spoiled, and adding a fresh supply.

Fritz and I now consulted what should be our first occupation. To my surprise, the advice he gave was that we should contrive a sail for our boat.

"What makes you think of this at so critical a moment," I cried, "when we have so many necessary things to arrange?"

"True, father," said Fritz; "but let me confess that I found it very difficult to row for so long a time. I observed that, though the wind blew strong against us, the current still carried us on. Now, as the current will be of no use on our way back, I was thinking that we might make the wind supply its place. Our boat will be very heavy when we have loaded it with all the things we mean to take away,

and I am afraid I shall not be strong enough to row to land; so do you not think that a sail would be a good thing just now?"

"Aha, Mr. Fritz! You wish to spare yourself a little trouble, do you? But I perceive much good sense in your argument. The best thing we can do is to take care and not overload the boat. We will, however, set to work upon your sail; it will give us a little trouble. But come, let us begin."

I assisted Fritz to carry a pole strong enough for a mast, and another not so thick for a sailyard. I directed him to make a hole in a plank with a chisel large enough for the mast to stand upright in it. I then went to the sail room, and cut a large sail down to a triangular shape. I made holes along the edges, and passed cords through them. We then got a pulley, and with this and some cords we produced a sail.

We employed the remnant of the day in emptying the tubs of the useless ballast of stones, and putting in their place what would be of service, such as nails, pieces of cloth, and different kinds of utensils. We took as much powder and shot as we could as a means of catching animals for food, and of defending ourselves against wild beasts. The vessel had been sent out to found a colony in the South Seas, and had been provided with a variety of stores not commonly included in the loading of a ship. Among the rest, care had been taken to have on board con-

siderable numbers of European cattle; but so long a voyage had proved fatal to the oxen and the horses.

The quantity of useful things made it difficult for me to select among them. We took good care to get knives and forks and spoons and a complete assortment of kitchen utensils. In the captain's cabin we found some services of silver, dishes and plates of high-wrought metal, and a little chest filled with bottles of many sorts of excellent wine. These we put into our boat. We stripped the kitchen of gridirons, kettles, and pots of all kinds. Our last prize was a chest of choice eatables, intended for the table of the officers, containing Westphalia hams, Bologna sausages, and other savory food. I did not forget some little sacks of maize, of wheat and other grain, and some potatoes.

We next added such farming tools as we could find—shovels, hoes, spades, and rakes. Fritz reminded me that we had found sleeping on the ground both cold and hard, and prevailed upon me to increase our cargo by some hammocks, and a certain number of blankets; and as guns had hitherto been the source of his pleasures, he added such as he could find of a particular costliness or structure, together with some sabres and clasp knives. The last articles we took were a barrel of sulphur, a quantity of ropes, some small string, and a large roll of sail cloth. The vessel appeared to us to be in so wretched a condition that the least tempest must

make her go to pieces. It was then quite uncertain whether we should be able to approach her any more.

Our cargo was so large that the tubs were filled to the very brim, and no inch of the boat's room was lost. The first and last of the tubs were reserved for Fritz and me to seat ourselves in and row the boat, which sank very low in the water. We put on our swimming jackets for fear of any misfortune.

Night suddenly surprised us, and we lost all hope of returning to our family the same evening. A large blazing fire on the shore soon after greeted our sight—the signal agreed upon for assuring us that all was well, and to bid us close our eyes in peace. We returned the compliment by tying four lanterns, with lights in them, to our masthead.

## CHAPTER VI

# A TROOP OF ANIMALS IN CORK JACKETS

EARLY the next morning, hoping to gain a sight of our beloved companions, I recollected that in the captain's cabin we had seen a telescope of superior size and power, and we speedily conveyed it to the deck. I fixed my eye to the glass, and discovered my wife coming out of the tent, and looking attentively toward the vessel, and at the same moment perceived the motion of the flag upon the shore. A load of anxiety was thus taken from my heart; for I had the certainty that all were in good health, and had escaped the dangers of the night.

"Now that I have had a sight of your mother," said I to Fritz, "my next concern is for the animals on board; let us endeavor to save the lives of some of them at least, and to take them with us."

"Would it be possible to make a raft, to get them all upon it, and in this way get them to shore?" asked Fritz.

"But what a difficulty in making it! And how could we induce a cow, an ass, and a sow, either to get upon a raft, or, when there, to remain motionless

and quiet? The sheep and goats one might perhaps find means to remove, they being of a more docile temper; but for the larger animals I am at a loss how to proceed."

"My advice, father, is to tie a long rope round the sow's neck, and throw her into the sea; her immense bulk will be sure to keep her above water, and we can draw her after the boat."

"Your idea is excellent; but unfortunately it is of no use but for the pig; and she is the one I care the least about preserving."

"Then here is another idea, father. Let us tie a swimming jacket round the body of each animal, and contrive to throw one and all into the water; you will see that they will swim like fish, and we can draw them after us in the same manner."

"Right, very right, my boy; your invention is admirable. Let us not lose a moment in making the experiment."

We hastened to fix a jacket on one of the lambs, and threw it into the sea. Full of anxious curiosity, I followed the poor beast with my eyes. He sank at first, and I thought him drowned; but he soon reappeared, shaking the water from his head, and in a few seconds he had learned completely the art of swimming. "Victory!" exclaimed I, hugging my boy with delight; "these useful animals are all our own. But take care not to lose our little lamb." Fritz now would have jumped into the water to fol-

low the poor creature, who was still floating safely on the surface; but I stopped him till I had seen him tie on a swimming jacket. He took with him a rope, first making a slipknot in it. Soon overtaking the lamb, he threw it round his neck, drew him back to our boat, and then took him out of the water.

We next got four small water casks. I emptied them, and then carefully closed them again. I united them with a large piece of sail cloth, nailing one end to each cask. I strengthened this with a second piece of sail cloth, and this contrivance I destined to support the cow and the ass, two casks to each, the animal being placed in the middle, with a cask on either side. Thus, in less than an hour, both my cow and my ass were equipped for swimming.

It was next the turn of the smaller animals. Of these, the sow gave us the most trouble; we were first obliged to put a muzzle on her to prevent her biting; and then we tied a large piece of cork under her body. The sheep and goats were more accommodating, and we had soon prepared them for our adventure. And now we had succeeded in assembling our whole company on the deck in readiness for the voyage. We tied a cord to either the horns or the neck of each animal, and to the other end of the cord a piece of wood, that it might be easy for us to take hold of the ropes, and so draw the animal to us if it should be necessary. We began with the ass, by conducting him as near as possible to the

brink of the vessel, and then suddenly shoving him off. He fell into the water, and for a moment disappeared; but we soon saw him rise, and in the action of swimming gracefully between his two barrels.

Next came the cow's turn; and, as she was infinitely more valuable than the ass, my fears increased. The ass had swum so courageously that he was already at a distance from the vessel, and there was room for our experiment on the cow. We had more difficulty in pushing her overboard; but she reached the water safely, and made her way with gravity and a sort of dignified composure. Thus we proceeded with our whole troop, throwing them one by one into the water, where by and by they appeared in a group floating at their ease, and seemingly well content. The sow was the only exception; she became quite furious, set up a loud squalling, and struggled with so much violence in the water that she was carried to a considerable distance, but fortunately in a direction toward the landing place we had in view.

We had now not a moment to lose. Our last act was to put on our cork jackets; and then we descended to our station in the boat and were soon in the midst of our troop of animals. We carefully gathered all the floating bits of wood, fastened them to the stern of the boat, and thus drew our flock after us. When everything was adjusted, we hoisted our sail, which, soon filling with a favorable wind,

bore us toward the land. But a sudden exclamation from Fritz filled me with alarm. "Oh, heavens!" cried he, "we are lost! A fish of an enormous size is coming up to the boat."

"And why lost?" said I. "Be ready with your gun, and the moment he is close upon us we will fire upon him." When he had nearly reached the boat, Fritz aimed so skilfully that the bullets were lodged in the head of the monster, which was an enormous shark. The fish half turned in the water and hurried off to sea. As he proceeded, he stained the water red.

When we reached a convenient spot for our cattle to land, I had only to untie the end of the cords from the boat, and they stepped contentedly on shore.

Ernest and Jack now ran to the boat, and began to shout their admiration of the mast, the sail, and the flag. In the meantime, we began to unpack our cargo, while Jack stole aside and amused himself with the animals. He took off the jackets from the sheep and goats, bursting from time to time into shouts of laughter at the ridiculous figure of the ass, who stood adorned with his two casks, and braying loudly.

Jack had round his waist a belt of metal covered with yellow skin, in which were fixed two pistols. "Where," I exclaimed, "did you get this curious costume, which gives you the look of a smuggler?"

"From my own manufactory," replied he; "and if you look at the dogs you will see more of my work."

Then I saw that each dog had on a collar similar to the belt round Jack's waist. The collars were armed with nails, the points of which were outwards. "And is it you, Mr. Jack," cried I, "who have invented and made these collars and your belt?"

"Yes, father, they are my invention, with a little of mother's help when it was necessary to use the needle."

"But where did you get the leather and the thread and needle?"

"Fritz's jackal furnished the first," answered my wife; "and, as to the last, a good mother of a family is always provided with them. Have I not an enchanted bag, from which I draw out such articles as I stand in need of? So if you have a particular fancy for anything, you have only to acquaint me with it."

Perceiving that no preparations were making for supper, I told Fritz to bring us the Westphalia ham. The eyes of all were now fixed upon me with astonishment, believing that I could only be in jest; when Fritz returned, displaying a large ham, which we had begun to cut in the morning. "A ham!" cried one and all; "a ham! and ready dressed! What a nice supper we shall have!" said they, clapping their hands. "It comes quite in the nick of time too,"

interrupted I; "for, to judge by appearances, a certain careful steward I could name seems to have intended to send us supperless to bed."

"I will tell you presently," replied my wife, "what it was that prevented me from providing a supper for you all at an early hour; your ham, however, makes amends; and I have something in my hand with which I shall make a pretty side dish." She now showed us about a dozen of turtles' eggs, and then hurried away to make an omelette of some of them.

"Look, father," said Ernest, "if they are not the very same which Robinson Crusoe found in his island! See, they are like white balls, covered with a skin like wetted parchment! We found them upon the sands along the shore."

"By what means," I asked, "did you make so useful a discovery?"

"Oh, that is part of our story," interrupted my wife; "for I also have a story to relate."

"Hasten then, my love, and get your pretty side dish ready, and we will have the story for the dessert. In the meantime I will relieve the cow and the ass from their jackets. Come along, boys, and help me."

They all followed me gaily to the shore. The cow and the ass were animals of a quiet and kind temper; but when it was the sow's turn, she escaped from us, and ran so fast that none of us could catch

her. The idea occurred to Ernest of sending the two dogs after her, who caught at her ears, and sent her back, while we were half deafened with the hideous noise she made; at last she let us take off her cork jacket.

In the meanwhile, the kind mother had prepared the omelette, and spread a tablecloth on the end of the cask of butter, upon which she had placed some of the plates and silver spoons we had brought from the ship. The ham was in the middle, and the omelette and the cheese opposite to each other. By and by the two dogs, the fowls, the pigeons, the sheep, and the goats had all assembled round us.

When we had finished our supper, I bade Fritz present our company with a bottle of Canary wine, which we had brought from the captain's cabin. My wife then began the promised story.

"This morning," she said, "I looked about, before the boys were up, in hopes to find a shady place where we might now and then retire from the heat of the sun; but I found not a single tree. This made me reflect a little seriously on our situation. 'It will be impossible,' said I to myself, 'to remain in this place with no shelter but a miserable tent. Why should not I undertake to do something that shall add one comfort to our existence? I will pass over to the other side of the river, and with my own eyes examine the country. I will try to find out some well-shaded spot, in which we may all be settled.'

"I assembled the boys round me, and informed them of my plans for an excursion. They lost not a moment in preparing themselves; they examined their arms and their game bags, looked out the best clasp knives, and cheerfully undertook to carry the provision bags; while I, for my share, was loaded with a large flask of water and a hatchet. I also took the light gun which belongs to Ernest, and gave him in return a carbine, which might be loaded with several balls at once. Attended by the two dogs for our escort, we arrived at the place at which you had crossed the river, and succeeded in passing over. After having filled my flask with river water, we proceeded on our way till we had reached to the top of the hill which you described to us as so enchanting.

"In gazing over the vast extent before me, I observed a small wood of the most inviting aspect. I had so long sighed for a little shade that I resolved to bend our course toward it; for this, however, it was necessary to go a long way through a strong kind of grass, which reached above the heads of the little boys.

"On a sudden we perceived a large bird rising from the thickest part of the grass, and mounting in the air. Each of the boys prepared to fire, but before they could be ready, the bird was out of the reach of shot. Ernest was bitterly disappointed, crying, 'What a pity!'

"'Well,' I said, 'as the opportunity is gone, let us look for the place in the grass from which he mounted; we may judge at least of his size by the mark he will have left there.' The boys all scampered away to the place, when suddenly a second bird, exactly like the first, except that he was a little larger, rushed out with a great noise and mounted above their heads.

"The boys remained stupid with astonishment, following him with their eyes and open mouths without speaking a word. We now examined the place from which the birds had mounted, and found a kind of large nest formed of dry plants, of clumsy workmanship; the nest was empty, with the exception of some broken shells of eggs. I inferred from this that their young had lately been hatched.

"We next reached the little wood. Unknown birds were skipping and warbling on the branches of the trees, without betraying the least alarm. The boys wanted to fire on them, but this I absolutely forbade. You cannot possibly form an idea of the trees we now beheld! What appeared to us at a distance to be a wood was only a group of about fourteen of them, the trunks supported in their upright position by arches on each side, these arches being formed by the roots of the tree.

"Jack climbed with considerable trouble upon one of these arch-formed roots, and with a packthread in his hand measured the actual circumfer-

ence of the tree itself. He found that it measured more than twenty-eight feet. I made thirty-two steps in going round one of those giant productions at the roots; and its height from the ground to the place where the branches begin to shoot may be about seventy feet. The twigs of the tree are strong and thick, and its leaves moderately large in size, but I was unable to discover that it bore any fruit. The shade seemed to invite us to make this spot the place of our repose. I resolved to go no farther, but to enjoy its delicious coolness till it should be time to return. A charming stream, increasing the coolness and beauty of the scene, flowed at our feet. It occurred to me that, if we could but contrive a kind of tent that could be fixed in one of the trees, we might safely come and make our abode here.

"On our return we kept close to the river, expecting to see along the shore some of the pieces of the vessel, which the waves might have washed up. We found pieces of timber, poles, large and small chests, and other articles. None of us, however, were strong enough to bring them away; we therefore contented ourselves with dragging all we could reach to the dry sands, beyond the reach of the waves at high water.

"We now suddenly saw Flora employed in turning over a round substance she had found in the sands, some pieces of which she swallowed from time to time. It was Ernest who recognized the objects

as turtles' eggs. We succeeded in collecting nearly two dozen of them, which we secured in our provision bags.

"Just then, to our astonishment, we perceived a sail, which seemed to be joyfully approaching the land. I knew not what to imagine; but Ernest exclaimed that it was you and Fritz; and we soon had the happiness of being convinced that it was indeed our well-beloved!"

## CHAPTER VII

# THE CONSTRUCTION OF A BRIDGE

WHEN my wife and I awaked the next morning, we resumed the question of our change of abode. "My own opinion is," said I, "that we had better remain here. The place is safe, and is near the vessel, from which we may continue to enrich ourselves; we are on all sides protected by the rocks. Let us then have patience yet a little longer, at least till we have got all that can be removed, or that would be useful to us, from the ship."

My wife replied that the intense heat of the sands was not to be borne; and that by remaining, we lost all hope of procuring fruits of any kind, and must live on oysters or on wild birds.

"As for the safety you boast of," pursued she, "the rocks did not prevent a visit from the jackals; tigers or other animals might follow their example. Lastly, as to the treasures we might continue to draw from the vessel, I renounce them with all my heart. We already have provisions and other useful things; and, to say the truth, my heart is always filled with distress when you and Fritz are exposed to the danger of the sea."

"We will then think seriously of the matter. But before we leave this spot for your favorite wood, we must contrive a store house among the rocks for our provisions and other things, to which, in case of invasion in the wood, we can retreat to defend ourselves. The next thing is to throw a bridge across the river if we are to pass it with all our family and baggage."

"A bridge!" exclaimed my wife. "Can you possibly think of such a thing? If we stay while you build a bridge, we may consider ourselves as fixed for life. Why should we not cross the river as we did before? The ass and the cow will carry all we possess upon their backs."

"But to keep what they carry dry they must not perform their journey as they did from the vessel. For this reason, if for no other, we must contrive a bridge. We shall want also some sacks and baskets to contain our different matters; you may therefore set about making these, and I will undertake the bridge."

We now began to look about for breakfast. My wife undertook to milk the cow, and afterwards gave some of the milk to each of the children. With a part of what remained she made a sort of sop with biscuits, and the rest she put into one of the flasks. During this time I was preparing the boat for another journey to the vessel, to bring away a sufficient quantity of planks and timbers for the

bridge. After breakfast we set out; and now I took with me Ernest as well as Fritz, that we might accomplish our object in a shorter time.

As we passed a little islet, lying to one side of us, we perceived a large number of sea gulls and other birds. I steered for the spot, and we stole softly up to the birds. The object which attracted them was an enormous fish, which had been thrown there by the sea. So eagerly were they occupied with the feast that not one of them attempted to fly off.

"How did this huge fish get here, do you suppose?" asked Fritz in wonder.

"I believe," answered I, "you were yourself the means; there is every appearance that it is the very shark you wounded yesterday. See, here are the two balls which you discharged at its head."

"Yes, yes, it is the very same," said my young hero, skipping about for joy; "I well remember I had two balls in my gun, and here they are, lodged in its head."

Ernest drew out the iron ramrod from his gun, and by striking with it to right and left among the birds, soon dispersed them. Fritz and I then advanced and cut several long strips of the skin from the head of the shark, with which we were proceeding to our boat, when I saw, lying on the ground, some planks and timbers which had been cast by the sea on this little island. On measuring

the longest, we found they would answer our purpose; and, with the aid of the crowbar and a lever which we had brought with us, we got them to the boat. We contrived to bind the timbers together, with the planks upon them, in the manner of a raft, tied them to the end of the boat, and so returned after only four hours' absence.

We were once more landed safely on our shore, but no one of our family appeared. We called to them as loud as we could, and in a few minutes my wife appeared between her two little boys, returning from the river. Each carried a handkerchief in hand, which appeared filled with some new prize; and little Francis had a small fishing net formed like a bag and strung upon a stick, which he carried on his shoulder. Jack reached us before the rest; and his first act was to open the handkerchief he held, and pour out a large number of lobsters at our feet. My wife and little Francis produced each as many more, all alive; so that we were sure of excellent dinners for some days at least.

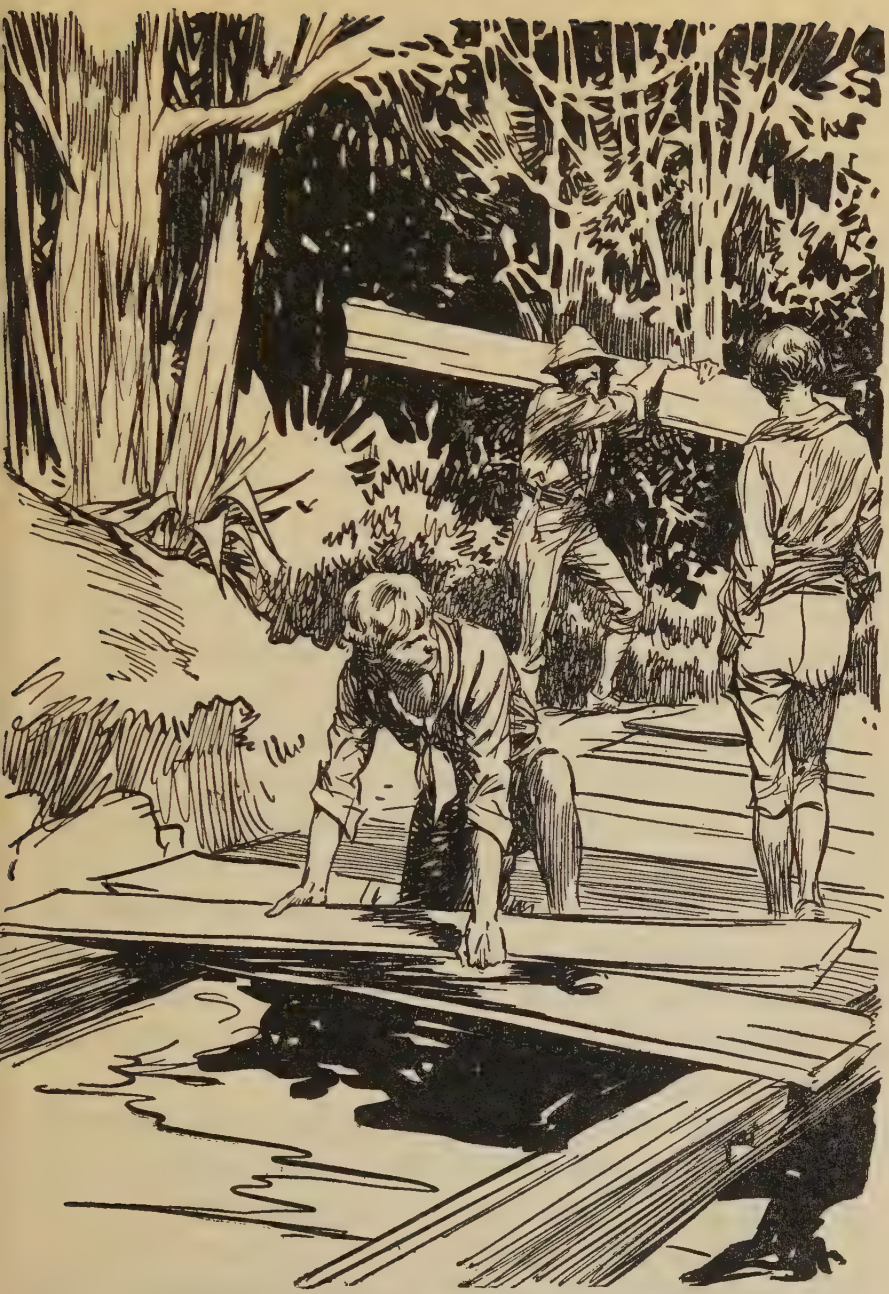
My wife set about dressing some of the lobsters, and Fritz and I employed ourselves in untying the raft of timbers and planks, and in moving them from the boat. I put a piece of rope, with a running knot at the end, round the neck of the ass, and passed the other end between its legs, to which I tied the piece of wood which I wished to be removed. The cow was harnessed in the same manner, and we

were thus enabled to carry our materials, piece by piece, to the spot which had been chosen at the river as the best for our bridge. It was a place where the shore on each side was steep, and of equal height; there was even on our side an old trunk of a tree lying on the ground, which I foresaw would have its use.

"Now then, boys," said I, "the first thing is to see if our timbers are long enough to reach to the other side. By my eye, I should think they are; but if I had a surveyor's plane, we might be quite sure, instead of working at a venture."

"But my mother has some balls of packthread, with which she measured the height of the giant tree," interrupted Ernest, "and nothing would be more easy than to tie a stone to the end of one of them, and throw it to the other side of the river; then we could draw it to the very brink, and thus obtain the exact length that would be required for our timbers."

"Your idea is excellent," cried I; "run quickly and fetch the packthread." By this method we found that the distance from one side to the other was eighteen feet. It appeared to me that I must allow three feet of extra length at each end, making in all twenty-four; and I was fortunate enough to find that many of those we had brought did not fall short of this length. There now remained the difficulty of carrying one end across the stream.



What now remained to be done was to lay some short planks across the timbers

We hurried through our dinner, each being deeply interested in the work, and thinking only of his part in building the *Nonsuch;* for this was the name we gave our bridge, even before it was in existence.

I first attached a timber to the trunk of the fallen tree, by a strong cord, long enough to turn freely round the trunk; I then fastened a second cord to the other end of the timber, and tying a stone to its extremity, flung it to the opposite bank. I next passed the river as I had done before, furnished with a pulley, which I secured to a tree; I passed my second cord through the pulley, and recrossing the river with this cord in my hand, I contrived to harness the ass and cow to the end of the cord. I next drove the animals back from the bank of the river. One end of the beam being fastened to the trunk of the tree, the animals drew along the other end, by means of the cord through the pulley, so that it crossed the river. Presently, to my great joy, I saw it touch the other side, and at length become fixed and firm by its own weight. In a moment Fritz and Jack leaped upon the timber, and crossed the stream with a joyful step upon this narrow but effective bridge.

The first timber being thus laid, the difficulty was less; a second and a third were fixed with the greatest ease. Fritz and I, standing on opposite sides of the river, placed them at such distances from each other as was necessary to form a broad

and handsome bridge; what now remained to be done was to lay some short planks across them quite close to each other. This we did so quickly that our construction was completed in a much shorter time than I should have imagined possible.

## CHAPTER VIII

# A CHANGE OF ABODE

AS soon as we were up and had breakfasted the next morning, I directed my sons to assemble our whole flock of animals, and to leave the ass and the cow to me, that I might load them with the sacks which my wife had made and I had filled.

We next began to put together all the things we should stand most in need of for the two or three first days in our new abode: working implements, kitchen utensils, the captain's service of plate, and a small provision of butter. I put these articles into the two ends of each sack, taking care that the sides should be equally heavy, and then fastened them on. I afterwards added our hammocks to complete the load, and we were about to begin to march, when my wife stopped me.

"We must not," said she, "leave our fowls behind, for fear they should become the prey of the jackals. We must contrive a place for them among the luggage, and also one for our little Francis, who cannot walk so far. There is also my enchanted bag, which I recommend to your particular care," said

she, smiling, "for who can tell what may yet pop out of it for your good pleasure?"

I now placed the child on the ass's back, fixing the enchanted bag in such a way as to support him, and I tied them together with so many cords that the animal might even have galloped without danger of his falling off.

We packed and placed in the tent everything we were to leave, and for greater security fastened down the ends of the sail cloth, at the entrance, by driving stakes through them into the ground. We ranged a number of vessels, both full and empty, round the tent, to serve as a rampart. At length we set ourselves in motion: each of us, great and small, carried a gun upon his shoulder, and a game bag at his back. My wife led the way with her eldest son, the cow and the ass immediately behind them; the goats, conducted by Jack, came next; the little monkey was seated on the back of his nurse, and made a thousand grimaces. After the goats came Ernest, conducting the sheep, while I, in my capacity of general superintendent, followed behind, and brought up the rear; the dogs for the most part pranced backwards and forwards. Our march was slow; I fancied we must resemble our forefathers journeying in the deserts, accompanied by their families and their possessions.

At last, without accident or adventure, we arrived at the place of the giant trees. Our astonish-

ment exceeded all description. "Good heavens! what trees! what a height! what trunks! I never heard of any so huge!" exclaimed one and all. Measuring the trees with my eyes, I confessed I had not formed an idea of the reality. "To you be all the honor, my dear wife," I said, "of the discovery of this agreeable abode, in which we shall enjoy so many comforts and advantages. The great point we have to gain is the fixing a tent large enough to receive us all in one of these trees, by which means we shall be perfectly secure from the invasion of wild beasts. I defy even one of the bears, who are so famous for mounting trees, to climb up by a trunk so immense and so bare of branches."

We began now to release our animals from their burdens, having first thrown our own on the grass. We next used the precaution of tying their two forelegs together with a cord, that they might not go far away or lose themselves. We restored the fowls to liberty; and then, seating ourselves upon the grass, we held a family council. I was myself somewhat uneasy on the question of our safety during the ensuing night; so I told my wife that I would make an endeavor for us all to sleep in the tree that very night.

Fritz had stolen away to a short distance, and we heard the report of a gun, and Fritz's voice crying out, "I touched him! I touched him!" In a

moment we saw him running toward us, holding a dead animal of uncommon beauty by the paws.

"Father, father, look, here is a superb tiger cat," said he, proudly raising it in the air, to show it to the best advantage.

"Bravo! bravo!" cried I. "Your exploit will call forth the gratitude of our cocks, hens, and pigeons, for you have rendered them what they cannot fail to think an important service. If you had not killed this animal, he would no doubt have eaten in one night our whole stock of poultry. One idea occurs to me; skin the animal carefully, so as not to injure it, particularly the parts which cover the forelegs and the tail. You may then make yourself a belt with it, like your brother Jack's. The odd pieces will serve to make some cases to contain our utensils for the table, such as knives, forks, and spoons. Go then, boy, and put away its head, and we will see how to set about preparing the skin."

In the meanwhile, Ernest looked about for a flat stone as a sort of foundation for a fireplace, and little Francis collected some pieces of dry wood for his mother to light a fire. Ernest was not long in finding what he wanted, and then he ran to join us, making various comments and inquiries respecting the name of the trees we intended to inhabit.

"It is my opinion," said he, "that they are, really and simply, enormously large hazel trees; see if the leaf is not of exactly the same form."

"But that is no proof," interrupted I; "for many trees bear leaves of the same shape, but nevertheless are of different kinds."

Presently little Francis came running, with his mouth crammed full of something, and calling out, "Mamma, mamma! I have found a nice fruit to eat, and I have brought you home some of it!"

"Little glutton!" replied his mother, quite alarmed, "what have you got there? For heaven's sake, do not swallow, in this rash manner, the first thing that falls in your way; you may be poisoned, and then you would die."

I quickly recognized, however, what Francis clutched in his hand. "A fig!" exclaimed I; "where did you get this fig?"

"I got it among the grass, papa," said Francis, "and there are a great many more. I thought it must be good to eat, for the fowls and the pigeons, and even the pig, came to the place, and ate them in large quantities."

"You see then, my dear," said I to my wife, "that our beautiful trees are fig trees." I took this occasion to tell the boys never to venture on tasting anything they met with till they had seen it eaten by birds and monkeys. At the word monkeys, they all ran to visit the little orphan, whom they found seated on the root of a tree, and examining with the oddest grimaces the half-skinned tiger cat, which lay near him. Francis offered him a fig. He first turned

it round and round, then smelled at it, and concluded by eating it voraciously.

"Bravo! bravo! Mr. Monkey," exclaimed the boys, clapping their hands; "so then these figs are good to eat!"

I had singled out the highest fig tree; and while we were waiting for dinner, I made the boys try how high they could throw a stick or stone into it. I also tried myself; but the lowest branches were so far from the ground that none of us could touch them. I perceived, therefore, that we should want some new inventions for fastening the ends of my ladder to them. I allowed a short pause to my imagination, during which I assisted Jack and Fritz in carrying the skin of the tiger cat to a near rivulet, where we confined it under water with some large stones. After this we returned and dined heartily on some slices of ham and bread and cheese, under the shade of our favorite trees.

## CHAPTER IX

# THE CONSTRUCTION OF A LADDER

OUR meal ended, I set about suspending our hammocks to some of the arched roots of the trees. I next spread a piece of sail cloth large enough to cover them, to preserve us from the dew, and from the insects. I then hastened with the two eldest boys to the seashore, to choose out such pieces of wood as were most proper for the steps of my ladder.

Ernest was so lucky as to discover some bamboo canes in a sort of bog. I took them out, and, with his assistance, completely cleared them from the dirt; and, stripping off their leaves, I found, to my great joy, that they were precisely what I wanted. I then instantly began to cut them with my hatchet, in pieces of four or five feet long; the boys bound them together in fagots. I next secured some of the straight and most slender of the stalks, to make some arrows with, of which I knew I should stand in need.

At some distance from the place where we stood I perceived a sort of thicket, in which I hoped to find some young pliant twigs. We proceeded to the

spot; but fearing it might be the retreat of some dangerous reptile or animal, we held our guns in readiness. Flora, who had accompanied us, went before. We had hardly reached the thicket before she made several jumps, and threw herself furiously into the middle of the bushes; when a troop of large-sized flamingoes sprang out, and with a loud rustling noise mounted into the air. Fritz fired, when two of the birds fell among the bushes: one of them was quite dead; the other was only slightly wounded in the wing, and finding that he could not fly, he ran so fast toward the water that we were afraid he would escape us.

Fritz, in the joy of his heart, plunged up to his knees in the water, to pick up the flamingo he had killed, and with great difficulty was able to get out again; while I, warned by his example, proceeded more cautiously in my pursuit of the wounded bird. Flora came to my assistance, and running on before, caught hold of the flamingo, and held him fast till I reached the spot, and took him into my protection. The bird made a stout resistance, flapping its wing with violence for some time. But at last I succeeded in securing him.

Fritz now appeared holding the dead flamingo by the feet: but I had more trouble in the care of mine, as I had a great desire to preserve him alive. I had tied his feet and his wings with my handkerchief; notwithstanding which, he still continued to

flutter about to a distressing degree, and tried to make his escape.

I now selected some of the oldest of the stalks of bamboo, and cut from them their hard pointed ends, to serve for the tips of my arrows. Lastly, I looked for two of the longest canes, which I cut, for the purpose of measuring the height of our giant tree. My sons indulged in a hearty laugh at me, and maintained that though I should lay ten such canes up the trunk of the tree, the last would not reach even the lowest branch.

Arrived once more at our giant trees, I examined the wound of the flamingo, and found that only one wing was injured by the ball, but that the other had also been slightly wounded by the dog. I applied some ointment to both, which seemed immediately to ease the pain. I next tied him by one of his legs, with a long string, to a stake I had driven into the ground, quite near to the river.

I now proceeded to measure the tree. I fixed my canes in the ground, and making use of some string, according to the method of the land surveyor in calculating altitudes, I found that the height of the lower branches of our tree was forty feet; a fact I was obliged to know before I could determine the length of my ladder. I now set Fritz and Ernest to work to measure our stock of thick ropes, of which I wanted no less than eighty feet for the two sides of the ladder. For my part, I sat down on the grass, and

Flora caught hold of the flamingo, and held him fast till I reached the spot

began to make some arrows with a piece of the bamboo, and the short, sharp points of the canes. As the arrows were hollow, I filled them with moist sand, to give them a little weight; and lastly, I tipped them with a bit of feather from the flamingo, to make them fly straight.

Fritz soon brought me the welcome tidings that our stock of rope, in all, was about five hundred fathoms, which I knew to be more than sufficient for my ladder. I now tied the end of a ball of strong thread to an arrow, and shot it off in such a direction as to make the arrow pass over one of the largest branches of the tree, and fall again to the ground. By this method I lodged my thread securely, while I had the command of the end and the ball below. It was now easy to tie a piece of rope to the end of the thread, and draw it upwards, till the knot should reach the same branch.

Having thus made quite sure of being able to raise my ladder, we all set to work with increased zeal and confidence. The first thing I did was to cut a length of about one hundred feet from my parcel of ropes, an inch thick; this I divided into two equal parts, which I stretched along on the ground in two parallel lines, at the distance of a foot from each other. I then directed Fritz to cut portions of sugar cane, each two feet in length. Ernest handed them to me, one after another; and as I received them, I inserted them into my cords twelve

inches apart, fixing them with knots in the cord, while Jack, by my order, drove into each long nails at the two extremities, to hinder the cane from slipping out again. Thus, in a very short time, I had formed a ladder of forty rounds in length. I now tied it with strong knots to the end of the rope which hung from the tree, and pulled it by the other, till our ladder reached the branch. Each of the boys wished to be the first to ascend upon it; but I decided that it should be Jack, he being the nimblest and of the lightest figure among them. Accordingly, his brothers and I held the ends of the rope and of the ladder with all our strength, while our young adventurer tripped up the rounds with perfect ease, and presently took his post upon the branch; but I observed that he had not strength enough to tie the rope firmly to the tree.

Fritz now interfered. "I can go up as safely as Jack," he said. As he was much heavier, I was not altogether without apprehension, but it was not long before we saw him side by side with Jack, forty feet above our heads, and both saluting us with cries of exultation.

Fritz set to work to fasten the ladder by passing the rope round and round the branch; and this he performed with so much skill and intelligence that I determined to ascend myself. But first I tied a large pulley to the end of the rope, and carried it with me. When I was at the top, I fastened the

pulley to a branch which was within my reach, that by this means I might be able the next day to draw up the planks and timbers I might want for building my aërial castle. I executed all this by the light of the moon, and felt the satisfaction of having done a good day's work.

## CHAPTER X

# THE SETTLING IN THE GIANT TREE

THE next morning my wife, having finished her daily occupation of milking the cow and preparing the breakfast, set off with Ernest, Jack, and Francis, attended by the ass, to the seashore to find some more pieces of wood. In her absence I ascended the tree with Fritz. The branches grew close to each other, and exactly horizontal. Such as were in the way I cut off either with the saw or hatchet, leaving none but what presented a sort of foundation for my work. I left those which spread themselves evenly upon the trunk, and had the largest circuit, as a support for my floor. Six feet above these I found others, upon which to suspend our hammocks; and higher still there was a further series of branches, destined to receive the roof of my tent, which for the present was to be formed of a large surface of sail cloth.

It was necessary to raise certain beams to this height of forty feet. For this I had my pulley, and Fritz and I contrived to draw them up, one by one. When I had placed two beams upon the branches, I hastened to fix my planks upon them; and I made my floor double, that it might have sufficient solid-

ity if the beams should be warped from their places. I then formed a wall of staves of wood like a park paling all round for safety. Our aërial palace now began to make an imposing appearance.

We unhooked our hammocks from the projecting roots, and by means of my pulley contrived to hoist them up the tree. The sail-cloth roof was supported by the thick branches above; and as it was of great compass, and hung down on every side, the idea occurred to me of nailing it to the paling on two sides, thus getting not only a roof, but two walls also; the immense trunk of the tree forming a third side, while in the fourth was the entrance to our apartment. The hammocks were soon hung on the branches, and everything was ready for our reception that very evening.

As we had still some planks remaining, we set about contriving a large table, to be placed between the roots of the tree, and surrounded with benches; and this place we said should be called our dining parlor. Around this table we sat down for supper, my wife holding in her hand an earthen pot, which we had before observed upon the fire. She took off the cover, and with a fork drew out of it the flamingo which Fritz had killed. She informed us that she had preferred dressing it this way to roasting, because Ernest had assured her that it was an old bird, which would prove hard and tough. We teased our glutton boy, and his brothers gave him

the name of the *cook*. We, however, had soon reason to know that he was right; for the bird, which, roasted, we perhaps should not have been able to touch, now appeared excellent, and was eaten up to the very bones.

The boys now, by my direction, lighted one of the heaps of wood. I tied long ropes loosely round the necks of our dogs, purposing to mount to our tent with the ends in my hand, that I might be able to let them loose upon the enemy at the first barking I should hear. Everyone was eager to retire to rest, and the signal for ascending the ladder was given. The three eldest boys were up in an instant; then came their mother's turn, who proceeded slowly and cautiously, and arrived in perfect safety.

My own ascent was last, and the most difficult; for I carried little Francis on my back, and the end of the ladder had been loosened at the bottom, that I might be able to draw it up in the tent during the night; every step, therefore, was made with the greatest difficulty, in consequence of its swinging motion. At last, however, I got to the top, and drew the ladder after me. It appeared that we were in one of the strong castles of the ancient cavaliers, in which, when the drawbridge is raised, the inhabitants are secured from every attack of the enemy. Notwithstanding this apparent safety, I kept our guns in readiness for whatever event might require their use.

## CHAPTER XI

# THE FIRST SABBATH IN EXILE

THE next day being the Sabbath, no work was to be done. Our religious observance of the day occurred immediately after our breakfast of warm milk. We all sat down on the tender grass; the boys full of impatient curiosity; their mother absorbed in silent reflection; while I felt the most lively desire to impress upon the young minds of my children some noble lesson. We sat thus for some time; then, all standing up, I repeated aloud the church service, which I knew by heart, and we sang some verses from the hundred nineteenth Psalm, which the boys had before learned; after which we sat down, and I began my talk, telling them a story which I hoped would help to their improvement. After the tale was finished, I put questions to my little congregation, and explained what they had not perfectly comprehended. Then, with a short prayer of benediction, I concluded the solemnity of our Sunday.

The next morning the boys assembled round me to ask that I would show them how to use arrows. We accordingly sat down on the grass; I took out my knife, and, with the remains of a bamboo cane,

began to make a bow. I was well satisfied to observe them one and all take a fancy to shooting with an arrow. This exercise might possibly become our only means of protection and subsistence. Our provision of powder must at last be exhausted; it therefore was of the utmost importance to us to acquire some other means of killing animals, or attacking our enemies.

While I was employed in finishing a bow, Ernest slipped suddenly away. Fritz came up at the same moment, with the wetted skin of the tiger cat in his hand. I began my instructions to my eldest boy respecting the trade of a tanner. I told him the method of getting rid of the fat of the skin, by rubbing it over with sand, and placing it in running water till it had no longer any appearance of flesh, or any smell; next to rub it with soft butter, to make it supple, and then to stretch the skin in different directions.

At this moment we heard the firing of a gun, which proceeded from our tent in the tree, and two birds at the same time fell dead at our feet. We were at once surprised and alarmed, and all eyes were turned upward to the place. There we saw Ernest standing outside the tent, a gun in his hand, and heard him triumphantly exclaiming, "Catch them! Catch them there! I have hit them; and you see I did not run away for nothing." He descended the ladder joyfully, and ran with Francis to take up the

two birds; while Fritz and Jack mounted to our castle, hoping to meet with the same luck.

One of the dead birds proved to be a sort of thrush, and the other was a very small kind of pigeon, very fat, and of a delicious taste. We now observed for the first time that the wild figs began to ripen, and that they attracted these birds. I foresaw, in consequence, that we were about to have our table furnished with a dish which even a nobleman might envy us. I gave the boys leave to kill as many of them as they liked. I knew that, half-roasted, and put into barrels with melted butter thrown over them, they would keep a long time.

After the excellent dinner which these birds provided, I made to my boys a proposal which I was sure would please them.

"What think you," said I, "of giving a name to the place of our abode, and to the different parts of the country which are known to us?"

They all exclaimed, joyfully, that the idea was excellent.

"We shall naturally begin," I said, "with the bay by which we entered this country. What shall we call it? What say you, Fritz? You must speak first, for you are eldest."

"Let us call it *Oyster Bay:* you remember what quantity of oysters we found in it."

"Oh, no," cried Jack; "let it rather be called *Lobster Bay:* for you cannot have forgotten what a

large one it was that caught hold of my leg, and which I carried home to you."

"My advice would be," suggested my wife, "that, out of gratitude to God, who conducted us hither in safety, we ought to call it *Providence Bay*, or the *Bay of Safety*."

"These words are appropriate and please me extremely," I declared. "But what name shall we give to the spot where we first set up our tent?"

"Let us simply call it *Tent House*," said Fritz.

"That will do very well. And the little islet at the entrance of *Providence Bay*, in which we found so many planks and beams that enabled us to make our bridge, how shall it be named?"

"It may be called *Sea Gull Island*, or *Shark Island*," proposed Ernest, "for it was here we saw those animals."

"I am for the last of these names, *Shark Island;* for it was the shark that was the cause of the sea gulls being there," said I.

"For the same reason," said Jack, "we will call the marsh, in which you cut the canes for our arrows, *Flamingo Marsh*."

"Quite right, I think. But now comes the great question: What name shall we give to our present abode?"

"It ought to be called simply *Tree Castle*," announced Ernest.

"No, no," cried Fritz, "that will not do at all;

that is the same as if, when we wanted to name a town, we called it *The Town.* Let us call it the *Eagle's Nest.* Our home in the tree is really more like a nest than a castle, and the eagle cannot but ennoble it, since he is the king of birds."

"Will you let me decide the question for you?" I asked. "I think our abode should be called *The Falcon's Nest;* for you are not arrived at the dignity of eagles, but are, too truly, poor simple birds of prey: and like the falcon, you also are, I trust, obedient, docile, active, and courageous. Ernest can have no objection to this; for, as he knows, falcons make their nests in large trees."

All exclaimed, clapping their hands, "Yes, yes; we will have it *The Falcon's Nest!* the sound is quite chivalrous; so health to *Falcon's Nest Castle!*" cried they, all looking up to the tree, and making low bows. I poured out a small quantity of sweet wine, and presented it to each, to solemnize our baptism. "Now, then," said I, "for the promontory, where Fritz and I in vain wearied our eyes in search of our companions of the vessel; I think it may properly be called *Cape Disappointment.*"

"Yes, this is excellent," all agreed. "And the river with the bridge——"

"If you wish to commemorate one of the greatest events of our history, it ought to be called *The Jackal's River;* for these animals crossed it when

they came and attacked us, and it was there that one of them was killed. The bridge I should name *Family Bridge*, because we were all employed in its construction, and all crossed it together on our way to this place."

In this pleasing kind of chat we settled the basis of a geography of our new country; and amused ourselves with saying that it must go by the first post to Europe.

As the evening advanced, and the intense heat of the day began to lessen, I invited all my family to take a walk. "Leave your work for this time, my boys," said I. "Which way shall we go?"

"Let us go to Tent House, father," said Fritz. "We are in want of powder and shot for the birds."

My wife too voted for Tent House. "My butter is nearly gone," said she, "for Fritz took an unreasonable share for his new trade of tanning."

"To Tent House, then, we will go; but we will not take our accustomed road along the seashore, but rather vary our pleasure by trying to explore some other way. We will keep along our own little stream as far as the wall of rocks; it will be easy for us to cross it by jumping from stone to stone, and so to get to Tent House; we will return with our provisions by the road of Family Bridge, and along the seashore."

Our route along the stream was at first extremely agreeable, being sheltered by the shade of large trees,

while the ground under our feet was a short and soft kind of grass. We proceeded slowly, the eldest boys made frequent escapes on before, so that we sometimes lost sight of them. In this manner we reached the long chain of rocks, over which our pretty Falcon's Stream made its escape in a cascade. We thus reached Jackal's River, and thence proceeded to Tent House, having with difficulty pushed through the high grass. On the right hand was a boundless sea; on the left, the island, with the bay and the chain of rocks. We distinguished different families of grasses, many of them of the thorn-leaved species, and stronger than those cultivated in the greenhouses of Europe. There was also in abundance the Indian fig, with its larger broad leaf; aloes of different forms and colors; the superb prickly candle, or cactus, bearing straight stalks, taller than a man, and crowned with long, straight branches, forming a sort of star; while that which pleased us best, and which was found there in great abundance, was the king of fruits, both for figure and relish, the crowned pineapple.

Soon after I was fortunate enough to discover among the multitude of plants which grew either at the foot or in the clefts of the rocks the karata, many of which were now in blossom. As I was acquainted with the properties of this useful plant, the pith of which is used for tinder by the negroes, who also make a strong kind of thread from the

fibers of its leaves, I was not less satisfied with this discovery than I had been with any we had previously made. Wishing to exhibit one of its uses to my children, I desired Ernest to take out my flint and steel.

I took a dried stalk of the tree, stripped off the bark, and there appeared a kind of dry spongy substance, which I laid upon the flint; and then striking it with a steel, it instantly caught fire.

"Here, then," said I, "we have an article of greater usefulness than if it served merely to gratify the appetite. Your mother will next inform us what materials she will use for sewing your clothes, when her provision of thread from the enchanted bag is exhausted."

"I have long been uneasy upon this very subject," said my wife, "and would willingly exchange our greatest luxury for some hemp or flax."

"And your wish shall be accomplished. If you examine, you will find some excellent thread under the leaves of this extraordinary plant, though the lengths of thread will be found not longer than the leaf." I accordingly drew out of one of the leaves a strong piece of thread of a red color, which I gave to my wife.

"How fortunate it is for us," said she, "that you have had the habit of reading and of study! None of us would have thought that this plant could be of any use. But will it not be difficult to draw

out the lengths of thread through the prickles that surround them?"

"Not in the least; we shall put the leaves to dry, either in the sun, or by a gentle fire. The useless part of the leaf will then separate by being beaten, and the mass of thread will remain."

We reached Jackal's River, which we crossed, stepping with great care from stone to stone, and shortly arrived at Tent House, where we found everything as we had left it. Fritz loaded himself with powder and shot; I and my wife and Francis employed ourselves in filling our pot with butter. Ernest and Jack looked about for the geese and ducks; but as they were become somewhat savage, the boys could not succeed in catching one of them. The idea then occurred to Ernest of taking a small bit of cheese, tying it to the end of a piece of string, and holding it to float in the water. The greedy animals hastened eagerly to seize it. In this way Ernest drew them toward him, one by one, each with the cheese in its mouth, till he had caught them all. Each bird was then tied in a pocket handkerchief, leaving the head at liberty, and fastened one to each game bag, so that all had a share in carrying them.

We now set out loaded on our return. The ducks and geese, with their heads and necks stretching out at our shoulders, cackling with all their might, gave us a truly amusing appearance; and we

could not help laughing as we passed the bridge one after another. Our mutual jokes, and the general good humor which prevailed, served to shorten the length of the walk, and none complained of fatigue till seated under our tree at Falcon's Stream.

## CHAPTER XII

# HOPES OF A SLEDGE—FISHING—A KANGAROO

I HAD observed along the shore many pieces of wood, of which I thought I could make a sledge. Early the next morning, taking Ernest for my assistant, I set out for the spot. After us came the ass, drawing some large branches of a tree, which I wanted for my undertaking.

We were not long in finding the pieces of wood. We cut them the proper length, and laid them cross-ways on the branches, which we thus changed into a kind of vehicle. We added to the load a little chest, which we found half buried in the sands, quite close to the waves, and then we set out on our return. The chest was soon opened by a strong hatchet, for all were eager to see what was within. It contained only some sailors' clothing and some linen, and both were wet with the sea.

Jack, meantime, had got up into the fig tree, and came down with the news that our pigeons had made a sort of nest there of some dry grass, and that it already contained several eggs.

After breakfast we finished the sledge. Two bent pieces of wood were fixed in their places by a

straight piece of wood placed across, and firmly fixed to the bent pieces in the middle and at the rear. I then fastened two ropes in front; and here was a sledge as perfect as could be desired.

I now determined to go to Tent House, taking Ernest with me. We harnessed the ass and the cow to our sledge; and, resting our guns upon our shoulders, took the road by the seashore, where the sands afforded better traveling for our vehicle than the thick wild grass. At Tent House we unharnessed the animals to let them graze, while we set to work to load the sledge with the cask of butter, the cask of cheese, a small barrel of gunpowder, different instruments, small ball, and some shot.

I desired Ernest to fill a small bag with some of the salt he had formerly observed there, and then to empty it into the large bag for the ass to carry, taking care to fill equally on each side. "During this time I will take the refreshment of bathing; and then it will be your turn to bathe, and mine to take care of the animals."

When I had bathed and dressed, I heard Ernest's voice calling out, "Father, father, a fish! a fish of monstrous size! Run quickly, father: I can hardly hold him; he is eating up the string of my line!" I ran to the place from which the voice proceeded, and found Ernest lying along the ground on his face, upon the extremity of a point of land, and pulling in his line, to which a large fish was hanging,

struggling to get loose. I ran hastily and snatched the rod out of his hand, for I feared the weight and activity of the fish might pull him into the water. I gave the line length, to calm the fish, contrived to draw him gently along into a shallow, from which he could no longer escape, and thus secured him. He appeared to weigh not less than fifteen pounds; so that our capture would afford the greatest pleasure to our good steward of provisions.

While Ernest went to the rocks and bathed, I had time to fill some more bags with salt. We then harnessed and loaded our animals, and resumed the road to Falcon's Stream.

When we had proceeded about halfway, Flora, who was before us, suddenly sprang off, and by her barking gave notice that she scented some game. We soon after saw her pursuing an animal which made the most extraordinary jumps imaginable. The dog continued to follow; the creature, in trying to avoid her, passed within gunshot of the place where I stood. I fired, but its flight was so rapid that I did not hit. Ernest, hearing the report of my gun, prepared his own, and fired so skilfully that the animal fell dead. I ran to find out what kind of quadruped it might be. It was as large as a sheep, with a tail resembling that of a tiger; but its snout and hair were like those of a mouse, and its teeth were like a hare's, but much larger; the forelegs resembled those of the squirrel, and were ex-

tremely short; but to make up for this, its hind legs were as long as a pair of stilts. We examined the creature a long time in silence. I could not be sure that I had ever seen an engraving or description of it in any natural history or book of travels. Ernest at length, clapping his hands together, joyously exclaimed, "And have I really killed this wonderful animal? What do you think is its name, father? I would give all the world to know."

"And so would I, my boy; but I am as ignorant as you. One thing, however, is certain, that this is your lucky day. Let us again examine this interesting stranger, that we may be certain to what family of quadrupeds it belongs; this will perhaps throw a light upon its name."

"I think it can hardly be named a quadruped," objected Ernest. "The little forelegs look much more like hands, as is the case with monkeys."

"They are, notwithstanding, legs, I can assure you. Let us look for its name among the animals who give suck; on this point we cannot be mistaken. Now let us examine its teeth."

"Here are the four incisory teeth, like the squirrel," said Ernest.

"Thus we see that it belongs to the order of Nibblers. Now let us look for some names of animals of this kind."

"Besides squirrels," reflected Ernest, "I recollect

only mice, marmots, hares, beavers, porcupines, and jumpers."

"Jumpers!" I cried. "That short word furnishes the necessary clue; the animal is completely formed like the jerboa, or jumping hare, except that it is twice the size of those of which I have read a description. . . . Wait a moment—an idea strikes me. I will wager that our animal is one of the large jumpers, called kangaroos. But now let us see how we shall manage to carry him to the sledge." We tied the forelegs of the kangaroo together; and by means of two canes, with considerable trouble, we contrived to carry it to the sledge, upon which it was securely fastened.

We at length arrived happily, though somewhat late, at Falcon's Stream. I gave some salt to each of our animals, to whom it was an acceptable treat. We then skinned our kangaroo, and put it carefully aside till the next day, when we intended to cut it to pieces, and lay such parts in salt as we could not immediately consume. We made an excellent supper on our fish, to which we added some vegetables; nor were our faithful companions Turk and Flora neglected. The labors of the day had more than usually disposed us all to seek repose; we therefore said our prayers at an early hour, mounted our ladder, and were soon asleep.

## CHAPTER XIII

# MORE STORES FROM THE WRECK —THE TORTOISE HARNESSED

I ROSE with the first crowing of the cock, descended the ladder, and set about skinning the kangaroo, taking care not to deface its beautiful smooth coat. Breakfast over, I ordered Fritz to get ready for Tent House, where we should prepare the boat, and again proceed to the vessel. It seemed likely that we might be forced to pass the night on board the vessel, and not return till the evening of the following day.

When we had reached the wreck, our first care was to select materials for a raft. Our boat had neither room nor solidity enough to carry a large burden. We found a number of water casks, emptied them, replaced the bungs carefully, and threw the casks overboard, after securing them with ropes, so as to keep them together at the vessel's side. This completed, we placed a sufficient number of planks upon them to form a firm and roomy platform, or deck, to which we added a gunwale of a foot in depth all round, to secure the load. Thus we contrived a handsome raft, in which we could stow thrice as much as in our boat. This task had taken

up the whole day. In the evening, Fritz and I were so weary that it would have been impossible for us to row back to land; so we lay down in the captain's cabin, on a good elastic mattress, where we both slept heavily, side by side, till broad daylight opened our eyes. We rose, and actively set to work to load our craft.

We began with stripping the cabin of its doors and windows; next we secured the carpenter's and gunner's chests, containing all their tools and implements. One of the captain's chests was filled with costly articles, which, no doubt, he meant to dispose of to the rich planters of Port Jackson, or among the savages. In the collection were several gold and silver watches, snuffboxes of all descriptions, buckles, shirt buttons, necklaces, rings; in short, an abundance of all the trifles of European luxury. But the discovery that delighted me most was a chest containing some dozens of young plants of every species of European fruit, which had been carefully packed in moss. I perceived pear, plum, almond, peach, apple, apricot, and chestnut trees, and vine shoots. We discovered a number of bars of iron and large pigs of lead, grinding stones, cart-wheels ready for mounting, tongs, shovels, plow-shares, rolls of iron and copper wire, sacks full of maize, pease, and oats, and even a little handmill. The vessel had been freighted with everything likely to be useful in an infant colony. We found a saw-

mill in a separated state, but each piece numbered, and so accurately fitted that nothing was easier than to put it together for use.

We finished our loading, having added a large fishing net, quite new, and the vessel's great compass. With the net, Fritz found two harpoons and a rope windlass, such as they use in the whale fishery. He asked me to let him place the harpoons, tied to the end of the rope, over the bow of our tub boat, and thus be in readiness in case of seeing any large fish; and I indulged him.

The wind was favorable, and briskly swelled our sail. The sea was calm, and we advanced rapidly, drawing our raft triumphantly after us. Fritz had for some time fixed his eyes on something of a large size which was floating on the water, and he now desired me to take the glass, and see what it could be. I soon perceived that it was a tortoise, which had fallen asleep in the sun on the surface of the water. No sooner had Fritz learned this, than he entreated me to steer softly within view of so extraordinary a creature. I readily consented; but as his back was toward me, and the sail between us, I did not observe his motions till a violent jerk of the boat, a sudden turning of the windlass, and then a second jerk, accompanied by a rapid motion of the boat, gave me the necessary explanation. "For Heaven's sake, what are you about, Fritz?" exclaimed I, somewhat alarmed.

"I have caught him!—I touched him!" cried Fritz, without hearing one word I had been saying. "The tortoise is ours; it cannot escape, father! Is not this, then, a valuable prize, for it will furnish dinners for us all for many weeks?"

I soon perceived that the harpoon had caught the animal, which, feeling itself wounded, shook the vessel in its endeavors to get away. I quickly pulled down the sail, and seizing a hatchet, sprang to the boat's head to cut the rope, and let the harpoon and the tortoise go; but Fritz caught hold of my arm, begging me to wait a moment, and not so hastily bring upon him the mortification of losing, at one stroke, the harpoon, the rope, and the tortoise. He proposed watching, himself, with the hatchet in his hand, to cut the rope suddenly should any sign of danger appear; and I yielded to his entreaties.

Thus, then, drawn along by the tortoise, we proceeded with a hazardous rapidity. I soon observed that the creature was making for the sea; I therefore again hoisted the sail; and as the wind was to the land, and very brisk, the tortoise found resistance of no avail; he accordingly fell into the track of the current, and drew us straight toward our usual place of landing, and, by good fortune, without striking upon any of the rocks. The tide threw us upon a sand bank, and the boat remained upright in the sand. I stepped into the water, which did

not reach far above my knees, when the tortoise suddenly gave a plunge, and then disappeared. Following the rope, I presently saw him stretched at length at the bottom of the water, where it was so shallow that I soon found means to put an end to his pain, by cutting off his head with the hatchet. Fritz gave a halloo and fired a gun, and the mother and her three young ones soon appeared, running toward us, as we waded ashore.

I requested my wife to go with two of the younger boys to Falcon's Stream, and fetch the sledge and the beasts of burden, that we might see at least a part of our booty from the ship put safely under shelter the same evening. A tempest, or even the tide, might sweep away the whole during the night.

When the sledge arrived, we placed the tortoise upon it, and also some articles of light weight, such as mattresses, and pieces of linen. On reaching home, we immediately turned the tortoise on his back, that we might strip off the shell, and make use of some of the flesh while it was fresh. Taking my hatchet, I separated the upper and under shell, which were joined together by cartilages. The upper shell of the tortoise is extremely convex; the under, on the contrary, is nearly flat. I cut away as much of the flesh of the animal as was sufficient for a meal, and laid the rest carefully on the under shell, which served as a dish, recommending to my wife to

cook what I had cut off, on the other shell, with no other seasoning than a little salt.

"I thought, father," said Fritz, "of cleaning the shell thoroughly, fixing it by the side of our river, and keeping it always full of pure water for my mother's use, when she has to wash the linen or cook our victuals."

"Excellent, excellent, my boy!" I cried. "This is what I call *thinking for the general good.* And we will take care to carry out the idea as soon as we can prepare some clay as a solid foundation for its bottom."

"When the water tub is complete," said Ernest, "I will put some roots I have found to soak a little in it, for they are now extremely dry. I do not exactly know what they are. They look something like the radish, or horse-radish; but the plant from which I took them was almost the size of a bush."

"If my suspicion is right," I answered, "you have made a beneficial discovery, which, with the assistance of our own wild roots, may furnish us the means of existence as long as we may remain in this island! I think your roots are *manioc*, of which the natives of the West Indies make a sort of bread or cake which they call *cassava.*"

The three eldest boys now went with me to the raft, to fetch another load before it should be dark. We secured two chests which contained the clothes of my family, as well as some books on interesting

subjects, and principally a large handsomely printed Bible. I added to these four cart wheels and a hand-mill for grinding; which, now that we had discovered the manioc, I considered of great importance.

On our return to Falcon's Nest the savory smell of the tortoise greeted us. We all partook heartily of the luxurious treat. Then, by means of a pulley, I drew up to our room in the tree the mattresses we had brought from the ship. They looked so inviting that we speedily retired to taste the blessing of sound repose.

## CHAPTER XIV

# THE PINNACE SECURED

NEXT morning we unloaded and floated the raft and the boat, and in a hasty trip to the wreck secured among other useful things a wheelbarrow. We discovered, too, a pinnace (*i. e.*, a small craft, the fore part of which is square), taken to pieces, with all its fittings, and even two small guns for its defense. To put it together, however, and launch it, would be an Herculean task. I collected various utensils, a copper boiler, some plates of iron, tobacco graters, two grinding stones, a small barrel of gunpowder, and another full of flints. All these articles were hurried into the boat.

At Falcon's Stream my wife exhibited a good store of tuberous roots, which she had got in during our absence, and a quantity of the roots I had rightly taken for manioc. Next morning, therefore, I set to work to teach the boys the art of the baker. I spread a piece of coarse linen on the ground, and assembled my young ones round me. I gave each of the boys a tobacco grater, and showed him how to rest it on the linen, and then to grate the roots of manioc. In a short time each had produced a heap

of a substance somewhat resembling flour, which my wife easily mixed into dough.

The next thing was to fix one of our iron plates, which was round and a little hollow, so as to rest upon two blocks of stone at a distance from each other; under this we lighted a large fire, and when the iron plate was completely heated, we placed a portion of the dough upon it with a wooden spade. As soon as the cake began to be brown underneath, it was turned, that the other side might be baked also.

When the cake was cold, we broke some of it into crumbs, and gave it to two of the fowls, and a larger piece to the monkey, who nibbled it with a perfect relish, making all the time a thousand grimaces.

After dinner these fowls were in excellent condition, and no less so was the monkey. "Now then, to the bakehouse, young ones," said I, "as fast as you can scamper." A large fire was quickly lighted, and I gave to each boy a plate of iron and a coconut full of grated manioc to make a cake apiece. They were to try who could succeed the best. The result was not discouraging for a first experiment, though it must be confessed we were now and then so unlucky as to burn a cake; but there was not a greater number of these than served to feed the pigeons and the fowls, which hovered round us to claim their share of the treat.

Meantime, I had been thinking how it might be possible to secure the pinnace. With my three sons to help me, I spent the next week at the wreck, going out every morning and returning every evening, in the work of putting the little ship together. One difficulty was the situation of the pinnace in the ship; and the other was its probable size and weight when put together. The enclosure which contained the pinnace was in the interior of the ship, and timbers of great bulk and weight separated it from the breach in the ship's side. In this part of the deck there was barely sufficient space for us to put the pinnace together. The breach also was too narrow to admit of her being launched from this place, as we had done with our tub boat. Lastly, the separate pieces of the pinnace were too heavy for us to remove them even with our united strength.

The cabinet which contained the pinnace was lighted by several small cracks in the timbers, which enabled one to see sufficiently to distinguish objects. I discovered that all the pieces were so accurately arranged and numbered, that I might flatter myself with the hope of being able to collect and put them together in spite of the narrow space in which I must work. We immediately set about it.

At length the pinnace was completed, and in a condition to be launched. She was an elegant little vessel, perfect in every part; she had a small neat deck; and her masts and sails were no less exact

and perfect than those of a little brig. It was probable she would sail well. We had pitched and towed all the seams, that nothing might be wanting for her complete appearance; we had even taken the pains of mounting her with two small cannon of about a pound weight; and had fastened them to the deck with chains. But in spite of the delight we felt in our work, the great difficulty still remained. The charming little vessel still stood fast, enclosed within four walls; nor could I conceive a mode of getting her out. To cut a passage through the outer side of the vessel seemed to present a task beyond the reach of man, even if not attended with dangers the most alarming. To cut away all timbers between the pinnace and the breach would take too long. From one moment to another, a storm might arise and engulf the ship, timbers, pinnace, ourselves, and all. My impatient fancy inspired the thought of a project which could not be tried without tremendous dangers.

I had found on board a strong iron mortar, such as is used in kitchens. I took a thick oak plank, and nailed to different parts of it some large iron hooks; with a knife I cut a groove along the middle of the plank. I sent the boys to fetch some match wood from the hold, and I cut a piece sufficiently long to continue burning at least two hours. I placed this train in the groove of my plank: I filled the mortar with gunpowder, and then laid the plank

thus furnished upon it, having previously pitched the mortar all round; and, lastly, I made the whole fast to the spot with strong chains, crossed by means of the hooks in every direction. Thus I accomplished a sort of cracker, from which I expected to effect a happy conclusion. I hung this machine of mischief to the side of the bulkhead next to the sea, having taken previous care to choose a spot in which its action could not affect the pinnace. When the whole was arranged, I set fire to the match, the end of which projected far enough beyond the plank to allow us sufficient time to escape. I now hurried on board the raft, into which I had previously sent the boys before applying a light to the match.

Not long after we reached the shore, the sound of a terrific explosion frightened my wife, and sent the boys jumping into their tubs, whither I soon followed them. When the vessel was in sight, I observed with pleasure that no change had taken place in the part of her which faced Tent House, and that no sign of smoke appeared. Instead of rowing, as usual, straight to the breach, we proceeded round to the side on the inside of which we had placed the cracker. The greater part of the ship's side was shattered to pieces; splinters covered the surface of the water; the whole exhibited a scene of terrible destruction, in the midst of which presented itself our elegant pinnace, entirely free from

injury! We entered by the new breach, and had soon reason to be assured that the pinnace had wholly escaped injury, and that the fire was entirely extinguished.

I perceived that it would now be easy to lower the pinnace into the water. In putting her together, I had used the precaution of placing her keel on rollers. Before letting her go, however, I fastened the end of a long, thick rope to her head, and the other end to the most solid part of the wreck, for fear of her being carried out too far. We put our whole ingenuity and strength to this undertaking, and soon enjoyed the pleasure of seeing our pinnace descend gracefully into the sea.

Two whole days more were spent in completely equipping and loading the beautiful little barge we had now secured. When she was ready for sailing, Fritz stood at the mast, to manage the ropes and cables, while I took my station at the rudder. The wind was favorable, and so brisk that we glided with the rapidity of a bird along the mirror of the waters.

Our old friend the tub raft had been deeply loaded, and fastened to the pinnace, and it now followed as an accompanying boat to a superior vessel. We took down our large sail as soon as we found ourselves at the entrance of Safety Bay, to have the greater command in steering the pinnace; and soon the smaller ones were lowered one by one, that we might the more securely avoid being thrown with

violence upon the rocks. The boys had arranged to fire the guns as a salute to their mother. Arrived within a certain distance—"*Fire!*" cried Commander Fritz. Ernest and Jack obeyed, the echoes majestically replied, and all joined instantly in three loud huzzas.

We now tried to push to shore with our oars in a particular direction, that we might have the protection of a projecting mass of rocks, and my wife and little Francis hastened to the spot to receive us.

Fritz now invited his mother to get on board, and gave her his assistance. When they had all stepped upon the deck, they entreated the permission to salute, by again discharging the cannon, and at the same moment to confer on the pinnace the name of their mother—*The Elizabeth.*

My wife applauded our skill and perseverance. "But," said she, "we have not, I assure you, remained idle while the rest were so actively employed for the common benefit. No, not so; little Francis and his mother found means to be doing something also. Come with me and see what we have done."

She conducted us up one of our rocks, and stopping at the spot where the cascade is formed from Jackal's River, she displayed to our astonished eyes a handsome kitchen garden, laid out properly in beds and walks, and, as she told us, everywhere sowed the seed of useful plants.

"This," said she, "is the pretty work we have been engaged in. In this spot the earth is so light, being principally composed of decayed leaves, that Francis and I had no difficulty in working in it, and then dividing it into different compartments: one for potatoes, one for manioc, and other smaller shares for lettuces of various kinds, not forgetting to leave space for some plants of the sugar cane. You will easily find means to conduct water hither from the cascade, by means of pipes of bamboo, to keep the whole in health and vigor."

"I should never have believed," I cried, "that you could have done so much in so short a time, and so secretly that I knew nothing about it!"

The pinnace was anchored on the shore, and fastened with a rope, by her head, to a stake, and we returned to Falcon's Stream.

## CHAPTER XV

# VARIOUS DISCOVERIES AND SINGULAR ANIMALS

DAYS passed rapidly in various occupations. I encouraged my boys in such athletic exercises as shooting arrows, climbing ropes, and throwing a weight attached to a cord so as to encircle a tree. We planted the fruit trees, and discovered a pair of young pigeons lately hatched. After several days we made a visit to the wood of gourds, for my wife wanted some vessels to contain milk, a large, flat spoon to cut out butter by pieces, and some pretty plates for serving it at table, made from the gourd rinds.

I made the boys gather or collect the gourds till we were in possession of a sufficient number. We now began our work; some had to cut; others to saw, scoop out, and model into agreeable forms. For my own part, I made a pretty basket, large enough to carry eggs, with one of the gourds, leaving an arch at the top to serve as a cover. I likewise accomplished a certain number of vessels, also with covers, fit to hold our milk, and then some spoons to skim the cream.

My next attempt was some bottles large enough to hold fresh water, and these occasioned me more trouble than all the rest. It was necessary to empty the gourd through the small opening of the size of one's finger, which I had cut in it; I was obliged, after loosening the contents with a stick, to get them out by friction with shot and water well shaken on the inside. Lastly, to please my wife, I undertook the labor of a set of plates for her use.

Fritz and Jack engaged to make hives for the bees, and nests for the pigeons and hens. For this last object they took the largest gourds, and cut a hole in front the size of the animal for whose use it was intended. The pigeons' nests were intended to be tied to the branches of our tree; those for the hens, the geese, and the ducks were to be placed between its roots or on the seashore.

Ernest after a while set off to find some water, as we were all very thirsty. It was not long before we heard him calling loudly to us, and saw him returning in great alarm. "Run quick, father," said he; "here is an immense wild boar."

I called the dogs, which arrived full gallop. Ernest conducted us to the place where he saw the boar; but it was gone, and we saw nothing but a plot of roots which appeared to have been ransacked by the animal. We soon heard the cry of the dogs; for they had overtaken the runaway, and soon after the most hideous growling assailed our ears from the

same quarter. We advanced with caution, holding our guns in readiness to fire together the instant the animal should be within the proper distance. Presently the spectacle of the two brave creatures attacking him on the right and left presented itself; each held one of his ears between its teeth. But it was not a boar, but our own sow which had run away and so long been lost!

After the first surprise we could not resist a hearty laugh. But here the attention of all was attracted to a kind of small potato which we observed lying thick on the grass around us, and which had fallen from some trees which appeared loaded with the same production; our sow devoured them greedily, thus consoling herself for the pain and fright the dogs had occasioned her.

The fruit was of different colors and extremely pleasing to the eye. Fritz expressed his apprehension that it was the poisonous apple called the mancenilla; but the sow ate them with so much eagerness that I doubted the truth of his idea. My sons put some of the fruit in their pockets.

We now again, from extreme thirst, began to recollect our want of water, and determined to seek for some in every direction. Jack sprang off, and sought among the rocks, hoping that he should discover some little stream: but scarcely had he left the wood than he bawled to us that he had found a crocodile.

"A crocodile!" cried I, with a hearty laugh; "you have a fine imagination, my boy! Whoever saw a crocodile on such scorching rocks as these, and with not a drop of water near? Now, Jack, you are surely dreaming. . . ."

"Not so much of a dream as you may think, father," answered Jack, trying to speak in a low voice; "fortunately he is asleep; he lies here on a stone at his full length; do, father, step here, and look at it; it does not stir in the least."

We stole softly to the place where the animal lay; but instead of a crocodile, I saw before me a large sort of lizard, named by naturalists *Yguana*, an animal of a mild character, and excellent as food. Instantly all were for seizing him, and presenting so rare a prize to their mother. Fritz was already taking aim with his gun: but I prevented him, observing that the animal being protected by a coat of scales, it might be difficult to destroy him, and that he is known to be dangerous, if approached when angry. "Let us try," said I, "another sort of experiment; as he is asleep, we need not be in a hurry."

I cut a stout stick from a bush, to the extremity of which I tied a string with a running knot. I guarded my other hand simply with a little switch, and thus with cautious steps approached the creature. When I was very near to him, I began to whistle a lively air, taking care to make the sounds low at first, and to increase in loudness till the lizard was

We stole softly to the place where the animal lay

awakened. The creature appeared entranced with pleasure as the sounds fell upon his ear; he raised his head to receive them still more distinctly, and looked round on all sides to discover whence they came. I now advanced by a step at a time, without a moment's interval in the music, which fixed him like a statue to the place. At length I was near enough to reach him with my switch, with which I tickled him gently, still continuing to whistle, one after the other, the different airs I could recollect. The lizard was bewildered by the charms of the music; he stretched himself at full length, waved his long tail, threw his head about, raised it up, and by this sort of action disclosed his sharp-pointed teeth, which were capable of tearing us to pieces if we had excited his hostility. I seized the moment of his raising his head to throw my noose over him. When this was accomplished, the boys drew near also, and wanted instantly to draw it tight and strangle him at once; but this I positively forbade, being unwilling to cause the poor animal so much suffering. I had used the noose only to make sure of him, in case it should happen that a milder mode of killing him, which I intended to try, failed of success, in which case I should have looked to the noose for protection; but this was rendered unnecessary. Continuing to whistle my most affecting melodies, I seized a favorable moment to plunge my switch into one of his nostrils. The blood flowed in abundance, and soon deprived him of life, without his

exhibiting the least appearance of being in pain; on the contrary, to the last moment, he seemed to be still listening to the music.

When we reached home, the monkey, Knips, soon scented the unknown apples in the boys' pockets. He came slyly up, stole several, and fell to chewing them with great eagerness. Being now convinced that the apples were not of a poisonous nature, I announced to the boys that they also might begin to eat them, and I myself set the example. We found them excellent in quality, and I began to suspect that they might be the sort of fruit called *guava,* which is much esteemed in such countries.

We had left our sledge, loaded with the gourd pottery, in the wood, so next day Fritz and I went to fetch it, and also to explore a little farther inland. We set out very early in the morning, and drove the ass before us for the purpose of drawing home the sledge.

As we were picking up some acorns, birds of exquisite plumage flitted about us; for this once I could not refuse Fritz the pleasure of firing upon them, that we might learn their species. He brought down three. I recognized one to be the great blue Virginia jay, and the other two were parrots. One of the two was a superb red parrot; the other was green and yellow.

We soon arrived at the guava trees, and a little

after at the spot where we had left the sledge; but as the morning was not far advanced, we pursued our way in a straight line at the foot of the wall of rocks, every moment expecting to reach their end, or to find some turn or breach or passage through them, that should conduct us into the interior of the island.

We soon entered a pretty little grove, the trees of which were unknown to us. Their branches were loaded with large quantities of berries of an extraordinary quality, being entirely covered with a minute meal. I knew of a sort of bush, the berries of which, when boiled, yield a scum resembling wax; it grows in America, and is named candleberry tree. This plant resembled it much, and the discovery gave me great pleasure.

A short time after we were struck by the singular modes of behavior of a kind of bird scarcely larger than a chaffinch, and clothed in feathers of a common brown color. These birds appeared to exist as a republic, there being among them one common nest, inhabited at pleasure by all their tribes. We saw one of these nests in a tree in a somewhat retired situation; it was formed of plaited straws and bulrushes; it enclosed great numbers of inhabitants, and was built round the trunk of a tree; it had a kind of roof formed of roots and bulrushes, carefully knit together. We observed in the sides small openings, seemingly intended as doors and windows to each

cell of this general home. The outside appearance of the whole was like an immensely large, open sponge.

While we were attentively examining this interesting little colony, we perceived numbers of a very small kind of parrot hovering about the nest. Their gilded green wings, and the variety of their colors, produced a beautiful effect. They seemed to be disputing with the colonists, and to prevent trying their entrance into the building; they attacked them fiercely, and even tried to peck at us, if we but advanced our hand to the structure.

Fritz, who was well trained in the art of climbing trees, was earnestly desirous to take a nearer view of them, and to secure if possible a few individuals. He threw his burden down, and climbed to the nest. He then tried to put his hand into one of the openings, and to seize whatever living creature it should touch; what he most desired was to find a female brooding, and to carry both her and the eggs away. Several of the cells were empty, but by perseverance he found one in the situation he wished; but he received so violent a peck from an invisible bird that his only care was now to withdraw his hand. Presently, however, he ventured a second time to pass his hand into the nest, and succeeded in seizing his prey, which he laid hold of, and in spite of the bird's resistance, he drew it out, squeezed it into the pocket of his waistcoat, and, buttoning it securely, slid down the tree, and reached the ground in safety.

The signals of distress sent forth by the prisoner collected a multitude of birds from their cells, who all surrounded him, uttering loud cries, and attacking him with their beaks, till he had made good his retreat. He now released the prisoner, and we discovered him to be a beautiful green parrot,[1] which Fritz entreated he might be allowed to preserve, and make a present of to his brothers, who would make a cage to keep him in, and would then tame him and teach him to speak.

We observed to each other that the true right of property must belong to the parrots, and that the brown-colored birds we at first saw were intruders.

We reached a wood the trees of which, in a small degree, resembled the wild fig tree; at least the fruit they bore, like the fig, was round in form, and contained a soft, juicy substance full of small grains. Their height was from forty to sixty feet; the bark of the trunk was scaly, like the pineapple, and wholly bare of branches except at the very top. The leaves of these trees are very thick; in substance tough, like leather; and their upper and under surfaces are different in color. But what surprised us the most was a kind of gum which issued in a liquid state from the trunk of the tree, and became immediately hardened by the air. This discovery awakened Fritz's attention. In Europe he had often

[1] *Tuiete.* This is the smallest kind of Brazilian parrot. There is an infinite variety in their plumage.

made use of the gum produced by cherry trees, either as cement or varnish, in his youthful occupations; and the thought struck him that he could do the same with what he now saw.

As he walked, he frequently looked at his gum, which he tried to soften with his breath, but without success. He now discovered that the substance would stretch on being pulled at the ends and, on being let go, would snap back like elastic. He was struck with surprise, and sprang toward me, repeating the experiment before my eyes, and exclaiming, "Look, father! If this is not the very thing we formerly used to rub out bad strokes in our drawings."

"Ah! What do you tell me?" cried I with joy; "such a discovery would be valuable indeed. The best thanks of all will be due to you if it is the true *caoutchouc* tree which yields the Indian rubber. Quick, hand it here, that I may examine it." Having satisfied myself of our good fortune, I had now to explain that caoutchouc is a kind of milky sap, which runs from its tree from cuts made in the bark. "This liquid is received in vessels placed expressly for the purpose. If an earthen bottle is dipped into it, and then held over heat for the liquid to dry, the bottle inside can be broken, and the outside will remain in the form of a rubber bottle. In the same way we may be able to make shoes and boots without seams if we can make earthen molds of the size of the leg or foot to be fitted."

Thick bushes of bamboo, through which it was impossible to pass, now seemed to furnish a conclusion to our journey. We were, therefore, unable to find a passage beyond the wall of rocks. We turned to the left toward Cape Disappointment and sugar canes. With these and the sledge, for which we returned by the seashore path, we made our way toward home.

## CHAPTER XVI

# USEFUL OCCUPATIONS AND LABORS

ON the following day my wife and the boys begged me to begin making candles of the wax from the berries I had found. I put some of the berries over the fire; my wife in the meantime was making some wicks with the threads of sail cloth. When we saw an oily matter of a pleasing smell and light green color rise to the top of the liquid the berries had yielded, we carefully skimmed it off and put it aside, taking care to keep it warm. By the time the berries were exhausted, we had produced a considerable quantity of wax; we next dipped the wicks one by one into it, while it remained liquid, and then hung them on the bushes to harden; in a short time we dipped them again, and repeated the operation till the candles were increased to the proper size. They were then put away and kept till sufficiently hardened for use. That very evening we burned one of the candles, with which we were well satisfied.

Our next enterprise was to make fresh butter of the cream we every day skimmed from the milk.

The utensil we stood in need of was a churn to turn the cream in. I recollected what I had read in a book of travels, of the method used by the Hottentots for making butter. I emptied a large gourd, washed it clean, filled it again with cream, and stopped it close with the piece I had cut from the top. I placed my vase of cream on a piece of sail cloth with four corners, and tied to each corner a stake; I placed one boy midway between each stake, and directed them to shake the cloth briskly, but with a steady measure, for a certain time. This exercise, which seemed like children's play, pleased them mightily, and they called it rocking the cradle, singing and laughing all the time. In an hour, on taking off the cover, we had the satisfaction of seeing some excellent butter.

By this time we had nearly exhausted our stock of clothes, and we were compelled once more to go to the vessel, which we knew still contained some chests fit for our use. We found her still fixed between the rocks, but somewhat more shattered than when we had last seen her. We secured the chests of clothes, and whatever remained of ammunition stores—powder, shot, and even such pieces of cannon as we could remove. Those that were too heavy we stripped of their wheels, which might be extremely useful.

We spent several days in visits to the vessel, returning constantly in the evening, enriched with

everything of a portable nature which the wreck contained—doors, windows, locks, bolts—nothing escaped our grasp; so that the ship was now entirely emptied, with the exception of the large cannon, and three or four immense copper caldrons. We by degrees contrived to tie the heaviest articles to two or three empty casks well pitched, which would thus be kept above water. I supposed that the wind and tide would wash the beams and timbers ashore, and thus with little pains we should have materials for erecting a building at some future time. Finally I resolved to blow up the wreck. We made a small opening in the side of a cask of gunpowder, and on quitting the vessel, we inserted a piece of match wood, which we lighted at the last moment, as before. We then sailed with all possible speed for Safety Bay.

About nightfall, a majestic rolling sound like thunder, accompanied by a column of fire and smoke, announced that the ship which had brought us to our present abode in a desert, and furnished us there with such vast supplies for general comfort, was that instant destroyed. At this moment love for the country that gave us birth, powerful sentiment of the human heart, sank with a new force into our hearts. The ship had disappeared forever! Could we then form a hope ever to behold that country more? We had made a sort of jubilee of witnessing the spectacle; the boys had clapped their

hands and skipped about in joyful expectation; but when the noise was heard and the smoke and sparks were seen, the sudden change which took place in our minds could be compared only to the explosion itself. In mournful silence we rose and took the road to Tent House.

We perceived in the water, and along the shore, abundant vestiges of the departed wreck; and amongst the rest, at a certain distance, the empty casks, caldrons, and cannon, all tied together and floating in a large mass upon the water. We jumped instantly into the pinnace, with the tub boat fastened to it, and made a way toward them. Fritz, with his accustomed readiness, flung some rope round two four-pounders, and contrived to fasten them to our barge; after which he secured also an enormous quantity of poles, laths, and other useful articles.

All these cannon, caldrons, and fragments of masts now had to be removed from the boats to the Tent House. We separated the cannon and the caldrons from the tub raft, and from each other. We succeeded in getting the caldrons upon the sledge, and in replacing the four wheels we had before taken from the cannon; and now found it easy to make the cow and the ass draw them.

The largest of the copper caldrons we found of the most use. We brought out all our barrels of gunpowder, and placed them on their ends in three separate groups, at a short distance from our tent;

we dug a little ditch round the whole, to draw off the moisture from the ground, and then put one of the caldrons turned upside down upon each group of barrels. The cannon were covered with sail cloth, and upon this we laid heavy branches of trees; the larger casks of gunpowder we prudently removed under a projecting piece of rock, and covered them with planks till we should have leisure to build an ammunition storehouse.

My wife, coming to see our labors, made the discovery that two of our ducks and one of the geese had been brooding under a large bush, and at the time were conducting their little families to the water. The sight of the little creatures carried our thoughts to Falcon's Stream, and the numerous old friends we had left there. We therefore fixed the next day for our departure.

## CHAPTER XVII

# A NEW DOMAIN—THE TROOP OF BUFFALOES

OUR plantation of fruit trees at Falcon's Stream had not a vigorous appearance, and inclined to curve a little in the stalk; we therefore resolved to support them with sticks, and I proposed to walk to Cape Disappointment to cut some bamboos. The boys and their mother wishing to accompany me, we set out in full procession. We went prepared to stay overnight should we find the day too short. I took the rough cart, which I had built, having fixed some planks across it for Francis and his mother to sit upon when they should be tired. In it I put our tools and provisions, some water in a gourd flask, and one bottle of wine from the captain's store.

First we arrived at the caoutchouc, or gum-elastic trees. I had taken care to bring with me several of the largest of the gourd rinds. I made deep cuts in the trunks, and fixed to them some large leaves of trees, partly doubled together lengthways, to serve as a sort of channel to conduct the sap to the vessels I had put in readiness to receive it. The sap soon began to run out as white as milk, and in large drops,

so that we were not without hopes, by the time of our return, to find the vessels full.

We pursued our way, which led us to the wood of cocoa trees; thence we passed to the left, and stopped halfway between the bamboos and the sugar canes, intending to furnish ourselves with a provision of each. On clearing the skirts of the wood, we found ourselves in an open plain with the sugar-cane plantations on our left, on our right those of bamboo, interspersed with various kinds of palm trees, and, in front, the magnificent bay formed by Cape Disappointment, which stretched far out into the sea.

The view was of such exquisite beauty that we were more than half disposed to desert our pretty Falcon's Stream and move our possessions hither. A moment's reflection, however, showed the folly of quitting the thousand comforts we had, with such industry collected there.

It was now evening; and while we were planning to build a hut from some large branches of trees, to shelter us from the dew and the coolness of the air, we were suddenly roused by the loud braying of the ass, which we had left to graze at a distance. On going to the place, we saw him throwing his head in the air, and kicking and prancing about; and while we were wondering what could be the matter, he set off at a full gallop in the direction of the bamboos.

The following morning, after we had breakfasted on some milk from the cow, some boiled roots, and a small portion of Dutch cheese, Jack and I set out with the two dogs to seek the ass through the bamboo plantation. After great fatigue, we discovered the print of the ass's hoofs on the soil. At length we perceived the sea in the distance, and soon after found ourselves in an open space which bounded the great bay.

A river flowed into the bay at this place, and we perceived that the ridge of rocks, which we had constantly seen, extended to the shore and ended in a perpendicular precipice, leaving only a narrow passage between the rocks and the river. At high tide this path must be under water, but at that moment it was dry. Since the ass had probably preferred this narrow way to the hazard of the water, we followed in the same path. We had also some curiosity as to what might be found on the other side of the rocks, for as yet we were ignorant whether they formed a boundary to our island, or divided it into two portions; whether we should see there land or water.

We continued to advance, and at length reached a stream which issued foaming from a large mass of rock, and fell in a cascade into the river. The bed of this stream was so deep, and its course so rapid, that we were a long time finding a part where it might be crossed. When we had got to the other

side, we found the soil again sandy, and mixed with a fertile kind of earth. In this place we no longer saw naked rock; but the prints of the ass's hoofs were again visible on the ground.

By observing closely, we saw with astonishment the prints of the feet of other animals, much larger than those of the ass. The tracks conducted us to a plain at a great distance, which presented to our wondering eyes an earthly paradise. We ascended a hill, and beheld a wide range of country, full of rural beauty and profound peace.

By straining our eyes, however, as far as we could see, we perceived at a great distance some moving specks. We hastened toward the spot; and, as we drew nearer, beheld a group of animals, which looked something like a troop of horses or of cows. I observed them sometimes run up to each other, and then suddenly stoop to graze. They were wild buffaloes. By good luck the dogs were far behind us, and the buffaloes gave no sign of fear or of displeasure at our approach; they stood perfectly still, with their large, round eyes fixed upon us in vacant surprise. Those which were lying down got up slowly, but not one among them seemed to have any hostile disposition toward us. The dogs' absence was most likely the means of our safety; as it was, we had time to draw back quietly, and prepare our firearms for defense. I knew we were unequal to an attack, and I recollected having read that the sound

of a gun drives the buffalo to desperation. I therefore thought only of retreating.

Unfortunately Turk and Flora ran up to us, and we could see were noticed by the buffaloes. The animals instantly, and all together, set up such a roar as to make our nerves tremble; they struck their horns and their hoofs upon the ground, which they tore up by pieces and scattered in the air. Our brave Turk and Flora, fearless of danger, ran, in spite of all our efforts, into the midst of them, and, according to their manner of attacking, laid hold of the ears of a young buffalo, which happened to be standing a few paces nearer to us than the rest. Though the creature began a tremendous roar and motion with his hoofs, they held him fast, and were dragging him toward us.

Our every hope seemed now to be in the chance of the terror the buffaloes would feel at the noise of our guns, which, perhaps, they would hear for the first time. With palpitating heart and trembling hands, we fired both at the same moment; the buffaloes, terrified by the sound and by the smoke, remained for an instant motionless, as if struck by a thunderbolt, and then one and all betook themselves to flight with such rapidity that they were soon beyond our sight. We were left with only one near us, a female, no doubt the mother of the young buffalo which the dogs had seized. She had drawn near on hearing its cries, and had been wounded by

our guns, but not killed. After a moment's pause, she took aim at the dogs, and with her head on the ground, as if to guide her by the scent, was advancing in her rage. She would have torn them in pieces if I had not prevented her by firing upon her with my double-barreled gun, and thus putting an end to her existence.

The young buffalo still remained a prisoner, with his ears in the mouths of the dogs, and the pain occasioned him to be so furious that I was fearful he might do them some injury. I scarcely knew how to give them aid. The buffalo, though young, was strong enough to revenge himself if I were to give the dogs a sign to let go his ears. I had the power of killing him with a pistol at a stroke; but I had a great desire to preserve him alive, and to tame him, that he might be a substitute for the ass, which we had but little hope of finding. Jack, who had his string with balls in his pocket, drew it out hastily, and making a few steps backward, threw it so skilfully as to entangle the buffalo completely, and throw him down. As I could then approach him safely, I tied his legs two and two together with a very strong cord; the dogs released his ears, and from this moment we considered the buffalo our own.

The question was now how we were to get him home. I thought that the best way would be to tie his two forelegs together so tight that he could not

run, yet loose enough for him to walk. "Next," pursued I, "we will adopt the method practiced in Italy; you will think it somewhat cruel, but the success will be certain; and we shall afterwards make him amends by the kindest care. Hold you the cord which confines his legs with all your strength, that he may not be able to move."

I then called Turk and Flora, and made each again take hold of the ears of the animal; I took from my pocket a sharp-pointed knife, and taking hold of the snout, I made a hole in the nostril, into which I quickly inserted a string, which I immediately tied so closely to a tree that the animal was prevented from the least motion of the head, which might have inflamed the wound and increased his pain. I drew off the dogs the moment the operation was performed. The creature would have run away, but the binding of the legs and the pain in the nostril prevented it. The first attempt I made to pull the cord found him docile and ready to go where I led.

I was unwilling to leave so fine a prey as the dead buffalo behind us. After cutting out the tongue, which I sprinkled with some of the salt we had in our provision bag, I took off the skin from the four feet, taking care not to tear it. I remembered that the Americans use these skins, which are soft and flexible, as boots and shoes, and I considered them precious. I lastly cut some of the flesh of the animal

with the skin on, and salted it. I abandoned the rest to the dogs, as a recompense for their behavior.

I now asked Jack to take the saw and cut down some of the reeds, which from their enormous size might be of use to us. I observed that he took pains to choose the smallest. "What shall we do," said I, "with these small-sized reeds? You are thinking, I presume, of a bagpipe, to announce a triumphal arrival to our companions!"

"You are mistaken, father," answered Jack; "I am thinking of some candlesticks for my mother, who will set so high a value on them!"

"This is a good thought," said I. "I am pleased both with the kindness and the readiness of your invention, and I will assist you to empty the reeds without breaking them; if we should not succeed, at least we know where to provide ourselves with more."

I dismissed for that day all thoughts of looking farther for the ass. I began now to think of untying the young buffalo; and on approaching him perceived with pleasure that he was asleep, which proved that his wound was not extremely painful. As I began to pull him gently with the string, he gave a start; but he afterwards followed me without resistance. When we reached camp, all agreed that our success with the buffalo was the most extraordinary of our achievements; all longed for the morning, when they might take their fill of looking at the spirited creature we had brought with us.

## CHAPTER XVIII

# THE MALABAR EAGLE

MY wife and the boys, during our absence, had ascended Cape Disappointment; had gathered wood, and made some torches for the night, and had ventured to fell and bring down an immense palm tree. It lay prostrate on the ground, at least seventy feet in length. Fritz had got up the tree with a long rope, which he fastened tight to the top of it. As soon as he had come down again, he and Ernest worked with the ax and saw to cut it through. When it was nearly divided, they carefully managed its fall with the rope.

Fritz was in high spirits too on another account; he brought me on his wrist a young bird of prey, of the most beauteous plumage; he had taken it from the nest in one of the rocks near Cape Disappointment. Very young as the bird was, it had already all its feathers, though they had not yet received their full coloring. It answered to the description I had read of the beautiful eagle of Malabar, and I viewed it with admiration. Intending to train it like a falcon, to pursue smaller birds, Fritz had already covered its eyes, and tied a string to its foot. I advised him to hold it often, and for

a length of time, on his hand, and to tame it with hunger, as falconers do.

We now built a fire, using green wood, so as to raise a thick smoke, over which I hung the buffalo meat I had salted, to dry and preserve it for our future use. We left it there during the night. The young buffalo was beginning to browse, and we gave him also a little of the cow's milk, after which we tied him by the side of the cow, and were pleased to see them agree and bid fair to live in peace together.

Next day was devoted to making the palm tree ready for use. Ernest was sure it was a sago palm, the pith of which would make nourishing food. Besides, by cutting the trunk from end to end, I could obtain two handsome large troughs for the conveyance of water from Jackal's River to my wife's kitchen garden at Tent House, and thence to my new plantations of trees.

By fixing at each end two small crosspieces or props, we succeeded, with our united strength, in raising the heavy trunk, and the top of it was then sawed off. We next began to split it through the whole length, and this the softness of the wood enabled us to do with little trouble. We soon reached the pith or marrow that fills up the middle of the trunk the whole of its length. When divided, we laid one half on the ground, and we pressed the pith together with our hands.

My young manufacturers brought water, and poured it gradually into the trough, whilst we mixed it with the flour. I then held a tobacco grater at the end of the trough, and pressed the paste strongly with my hand. The grainlike part passed with ease through the small holes of the grater, and the woody parts which did not pass were thrown aside in a heap, in the hope that mushrooms might spring from them. My wife spread out the small grains in the sun upon sail cloth, for the purpose of drying them. Thus we procured a good supply of a wholesome and pleasant food.

Early next morning we were ready to return to Falcon's Stream. Our buffalo now commenced his service, yoked with the cow; he supplied the want of the ass, and was very mild.

We returned the same way as we came, in order to load the cart with a provision of wax berries and elastic gum. The elastic gum had not yielded as much as I expected, from the too rapid thickening caused by the sun. We obtained, however, about a quart, enough for the experiment of the boots.

We set out again, preceded by Fritz and Jack as pioneers. Suddenly we heard a dreadful noise. I began to fear a tiger or a panther was near at hand, or had perhaps attacked the two boys. The dogs, barking frightfully, ran furiously up to a thicket, where they stopped, and with their noses to the ground, strove to enter it. I had no doubt some

terrible animal was lurking there; and Fritz, who had seen it through the leaves, confirmed my suspicion. "It is about the size of the young buffalo," he said, "and his hair is black and shaggy."

I was going to fire into the thicket, when Jack, who had thrown himself on his face on the ground to have a better view of the animal, got up in a fit of laughter. "It is only," exclaimed he, "our old sow, who is never tired of playing off her tricks upon us."

Half vexed, half laughing, we broke into the midst of the thicket, where in reality we found our old companion stretched on the earth, but by no means in a state of dreary solitude; she had round her seven little creatures, which had been littered a few days, and were sprawling about, contending with each other for the best place near their mother for a hearty meal. This discovery gave us considerable satisfaction, and we all greeted the good matron, who seemed to recollect and welcome us with a sociable kind of grunting. It was decided that for the present the sow and her young should be left where they were.

At Falcon's Stream all was in due order, and our animals welcomed our return in their own jargon and manner. It was necessary to tie up the buffalo again, to accustom it by degrees to confinement; and the handsome Malabar eagle shared the same fate. Fritz chose to place it near the parrot, on the

root of a tree; he fastened it with a piece of packthread, of sufficient length to allow it free motion, and uncovered its eyes. Till then the bird had been tolerably quiet; but the instant it was restored to light it fell into a rage that surprised us. It proudly raised its head, its feathers became ruffled, and its eyeballs seemed to whirl in their orbits and dart out vivid lightnings. All the poultry were terrified and fled; but the poor luckless parrot was too near to escape. Before we were aware of the danger, it was seized and mangled by the hooked beak of the eagle.

Fritz vented his anger in loud and passionate reproaches; he would have killed the murderer on the spot had not Ernest run up and entreated him to spare its life. "Parrots," said he, "we shall find in plenty, but never perhaps so beauteous, so magnificent a bird as this eagle, which, as father observes, we may train for hawking. You may blame only yourself for the parrot's death; why did you uncover his eyes? I could have told you that falconers keep them covered six weeks, till they are completely tamed. But now, brother, let me have the care of him; let me manage the unruly fellow; he shall soon, in consequence of the methods I shall use, be as mild and obedient as a newborn puppy."

Fritz refused to part with his eagle, and Ernest did not long oppose giving him the information he wanted. "I have read," said he, "somewhere, that

the Caribs puff tobacco smoke into the nostrils of the birds of prey and of the parrots they catch, until they are giddy and almost senseless; this stupefaction over, they are no longer wild."

Fritz resolved on the experiment; he took some tobacco and a pipe, of which we had plenty in the sailors' chests, and began to smoke, at the same time gradually approaching the unruly bird. As soon as it was somewhat composed, he replaced the fillet over the eyes, and smoked close to its beak and nostrils so effectually that it became motionless on the spot, and had the exact air of a stuffed bird. Fritz thought it dead, and was inclined to be angry with his brother; but I told him it would not hold on the perch if it were lifeless, and that its head alone was affected; and so it proved. The favorite came to itself by degrees, and made no noise when its eyes were unbound; it looked at us with an air of surprise, but without fury, and grew tamer and calmer every day.

We next began a business which I and my wife had been thinking of for some time. She found it difficult, and even dangerous, to ascend and descend our tree with a rope ladder. We never went there but on going to bed, and each time felt an apprehension that one of the children, who scrambled up like cats, might make a false step, and perhaps be lame forever. Bad weather might come on, and compel us for a long time together to stay

in our airy apartment, and consequently to ascend and descend oftener.

A staircase on the outside was not to be thought of, the height of the tree rendered that impracticable, as I had nothing to rest it on, and should be at a loss to find beams to sustain it; but I had for some time formed the idea of constructing winding stairs within the immense trunk of the tree, if it should happen to be hollow, or I could contrive to make it so. I had heard the boys talking of a hollow in our tree, and of a swarm of bees issuing from it, and I now, therefore, went to examine.

The boys seized the idea with ardor; they sprang up, and climbed to the tops of the roots like squirrels, to strike at the trunk with axes, and to judge from the sound how far it was hollow; but they soon paid dearly for their attempt; the whole swarm of bees, alarmed at the noise made against their dwelling, issued forth, buzzing with fury, attacked the little disturbers, began to sting them, stuck to their hair and clothes, and soon put them to flight, uttering lamentable cries. My wife and I had some trouble to stop the course of their uproar, and cover their wounds with fresh earth to quiet the smart.

Jack, whose temper was rash, had struck fiercely upon the bees' nest, and was more severely attacked by them than the rest; it was necessary, so serious was the injury, to cover the whole of his face with

linen. The less active Ernest got up the last, and was the first to run off when he saw the consequences, and thus avoided any further injury than a sting or two; but some hours elapsed before the other boys could open their eyes, or be in the least relieved from the acute pain that had been inflicted. When they grew a little better, the desire of being revenged of the insects that had so roughly used them had the ascendant in their minds: they teased me to hasten the measures for getting everything in readiness for obtaining possession of their honey. While the bees still buzzed furiously round the tree, I prepared for use the next day the large gourd long intended for a hive.

## CHAPTER XIX

# TREATMENT OF BEES AND TRAINING OF ANIMALS

NEXT morning the bees had returned to their cells, and I stopped the passages with clay, leaving only a sufficient opening for the tube of my pipe. I then smoked as much as was needed to stupefy, without killing, the little warlike creatures. At first a humming was heard in the hollow of the tree, and a noise like the gathering tempest, which died away by degrees. All was become calm, and I withdrew my tube without the appearance of a single bee. Fritz had got up by me; we then, with a chisel and a small ax, cut out of the tree, under the bees' hole of entrance, a piece three feet square, producing as it were, a window, through which the inside of the tree was laid open to view.

We were filled at once with joy and astonishment on beholding the wonderful work of this colony of insects. There was such a stock of wax and honey that we feared our vessels would not contain it. The whole interior of the tree was lined with fine honeycombs. I cut them off with care, and put

them in the gourds the boys constantly supplied me with. When I had somewhat cleared the cavity, I put the upper combs, in which the bees had assembled in clusters and swarms, into the gourd which was to serve as a hive, placed it on the plank I had purposely raised, and covered it with a straw top I had made. I came down, bringing with me the rest of the honeycombs, with which I filled a small cask, previously well washed in the stream. Some I kept out for a treat at dinner; my wife put by the remainder.

To prevent the bees from swarming again in the tree, I placed a board at the aperture, and burned a few handfuls of tobacco on it, the smell and smoke of which drove them back whenever they attempted to return. At length they became gradually reconciled to their new residence, where their queen no doubt had settled herself. About nightfall, when we found the bees quiet in the gourd, or settled in clusters upon near branches, we emptied the cask of honey into a kettle, mixed it with a little water, and set it over a gentle fire. When it became liquid, it was strained and squeezed through a bag, and afterwards poured back into the cask, which was left upright and uncovered all night to cool. In the morning the wax was entirely separated, and had risen to the surface in a compact and solid cake, that was easily removed. Beneath was the purest, most beautiful and delicate honey that could be

seen. At the hive everything was in order; the bees going forth in swarms, and returning loaded with wax, from which I judged they were forming fresh edifices in their new dwelling place.

Now we proceeded to examine the inside of the tree. I sounded it with a pole from the opening I had made; and a stone fastened to a string served us to sound the bottom, and thus to ascertain the height and depth of the cavity. To my great surprise, the pole penetrated without any resistance to the branches on which our dwelling rested, and the stone descended to the roots. The trunk, it appeared, had wholly lost its pith, and most of its wood internally. It seems that this species of tree, like the willow in our climates, receives nourishment through the bark; for it did not look decayed, and its branches were luxuriant and beautiful. I determined to begin our construction in its roomy hollow that very day.

We began to cut into the side of the tree, toward the sea, a doorway equal in dimensions to the door of the captain's cabin, which we had removed with all its framework and windows. We next cleared away from the cavity all the rotten wood, and rendered the interior even and smooth, leaving sufficient thickness for cutting out resting places for the winding stairs, without injuring the bark. I then fixed in the center the trunk of a tree about twenty feet in length, and a foot thick, completely stripped of its

branches, in order to carry my winding staircase round it. On the outside of this trunk, and the inside of the cavity of our own tree, we formed grooves, in which the boards were to be placed to form the stairs. These were continued till I had got to the height of the trunk round which they turned. I made three more openings at suitable distances, and thus completely lighted the whole ascent. A second trunk was fixed upon the first, and firmly held with screws and crosswise beams. It was surrounded, like the other, with stairs cut slopingly; and thus we carried it to the level of our bedchamber. Here I made another door directly into it. To render it more solid and agreeable, I closed the spaces between the stairs with plank. I then fastened two strong ropes, the one descending the length of the central trunk, the other along the inside of our large tree, to assist in case of slipping. I fixed the sash windows taken from the captain's cabin in the openings we had made to give light to the stairs; and I then found I could add nothing further.

While the staircase was building, our brave Flora had six puppies, all healthy, and likely to live. The number was so alarming that I had to drown all but a male and a female to keep up the breed. A few days later the two she goats gave us two kids, and our ewes five lambs; so that we now possessed a pretty flock.

By this time the wound in the young buffalo's nose was quite healed, so that I could lead it at will with a cord or stick passed through the opening. I resolved to break in this spirited beast for riding as well as drawing. It was already used to the shafts; but I had more trouble in making him used to a rider and a girth. I formed a sort of saddle with sail cloth, and tacked it to the girth. Upon this I fixed a burden, which I increased progressively. I soon brought the animal to carry, patiently, large bags of roots, salt, and other articles. The monkey was his first rider, who stuck so close to the saddle that in spite of the plunging and kicking of the buffalo it was not thrown. Francis was then tried, as the lightest of the family; but throughout his excursion I led the beast with a halter, that it might not throw him off.

Jack now showed some impatience to mount the animal in his turn. I passed the stick through the buffalo's nose, tied strong packthread at each end of it, and put this new-fangled bridle into the hands of the young rider, directing him how to use it. For a time the lad kept his saddle, notwithstanding the unruly gestures of the creature; at length a side jolt threw him on the sand, without his receiving much injury. Ernest, Fritz, and lastly myself got on successively, with more or less effect. His trotting shook us to the very center, the rapidity of his gallop turned us giddy, and our lessons in horse-

manship were repeated many days before the animal was tamed, and could be ridden with either safety or pleasure. The strength and swiftness of our saddled buffalo were prodigious. It seemed to sport with the heaviest loads. My three eldest boys mounted it together now and then, and it ran with them with the swiftness of lightning.

We now began to think of manufacturing our rubber boots. I began with a pair for myself. I filled a pair of stockings with sand, and covered them with a layer of clay, which I first dried in the shade, and afterwards in the sun. I then took a sole of buffalo leather, well beaten, and studded round with tacks, which served me to fix it under the foot of the stocking; after this I poured the liquid gum into all the spaces, so that, when it dried, the leather sole and the stocking would stick together. I next smeared the whole with a thick coat of gum, and as soon as this layer was dried on, I put on another. After this I emptied the sand, drew out the stocking, removed the hardened clay, shook off the dust, and thus obtained a pair of seamless boots, pliant, warm, soft, smooth, and completely waterproof.

We also built a fountain, a perpetual source of pleasure to my wife, and indeed to all of us. In the upper part of the stream we built with stakes and stones a kind of dam, that raised the water sufficiently to convey it into the palm-tree troughs; and

afterwards, by means of a gentle slope, it glided on and fell into the tortoise-shell basin, which we had elevated on stones. The overflow passed off through a cane pipe. We thus produced, close to our abode, an agreeable fountain, delighting us with its rill, and supplying us with a pure crystal fluid, such as we frequently could not get when we drew our water from the bed of the river.

Early one morning we heard at a distance two strange kinds of voices that resembled the howlings of wild beasts mixed with hissings and sounds of some creature at its last gasp. Our dogs pricked up their ears, and seemed to whet their teeth.

We loaded our guns and pistols, and placed them together within our castle in the tree. By this time the howlings were close to us. Fritz listened attentively, and then threw down his gun, and burst into a loud laughter, exclaiming, "Father, it is our ass! The deserter comes back to us, chanting the hymn of return; listen! do you not hear his melodious brayings?"

I listened, and a fresh roar raised loud peals of laughter amongst us. Shortly after we had the satisfaction of seeing among the trees our old friend Grizzle, moving toward us leisurely, and stopping now and then to browse; but, to our great joy, he was accompanied by a fine onagra, or wild ass. With a good deal of difficulty Fritz and I managed to make him captive, and fastened him between

two roots. We also guarded against master Grizzle's playing truant again, and tied him fast with a new halter, confining his forelegs with a rope. I then fastened him and the wild ass side by side.

We had now the additional occupation of training the wild ass for our service or our pleasure. We named him *Lightfoot.*

Three of our hens had raised their broods, and about forty little chickens were chirping and hopping about us. This increase of our poultry reminded us that we must build between the roots of our great tree covered sheds for all our fowls and animals, for the rainy season, which is the winter of these countries, was drawing near.

We began by forming a kind of roof above the arched roots of our tree, using bamboo canes for the purpose, filling the spaces with moss and clay, and spreading over the whole a thick coat of tar. Under this roof, between the roots, were various stalls, sheltered from rain and sun, that could be easily shut and separated from each other by means of planks nailed upon the roots. Part of them were to serve as a stable and yard, others as an eating house, a storeroom, and a hayloft, to keep our hay and provisions dry in. Then it was necessary to fill these places with stores of every kind for our supply throughout the wet season. We went daily here and there with our cart to collect everything useful.

One evening, on our return from digging up roots, as our cart, loaded with bags, drawn by the buffalo, ass, and cow, was gently rolling along, I saw still a vacant place in the vehicle. I advised my wife to go home with the two youngest boys, whilst I went round by the wood of oaks with Ernest and Fritz, to gather as many sweet acorns as we could find room for. We had still some empty sacks. Ernest was accompanied by his monkey, who seldom left him; and Fritz, horsemanlike, was on the onagra.

When we reached the oaks, Lightfoot was tied to a bush, and we set actively to work to gather the acorns that had dropped from the trees. While all were busily employed, the monkey quitted its master's shoulder, and skipped unperceived into an adjoining bush. When Ernest missed him, he followed after, and in an instant we heard him exclaim, "Come quickly, father! A fine heath fowl's nest, full of eggs."

Fritz ran up directly, and in a few moments brought out alive the male and female heath fowl, both very beautiful. And now Ernest came forward, driving the monkey before him, and carrying his hat with the utmost care. He had stuck his girdle full of narrow, sharp-pointed leaves, in shape like a knife blade, which reminded me of the production named sword grass. On coming up to me he uncovered his hat, crying out, "Here, father, are the eggs. I found them in a nest concealed under these

long leaves. I am going to take them home, they will please my mother; and these leaves will amuse Francis, for they are like swords, and he will like them for a plaything."

It was now time to think of moving homeward; my two sons filled the bags with acorns, and put them on Lightfoot. Fritz mounted, Ernest carried the eggs, and I took charge of the hen. When we arrived, the female bird was too frightened and wild to sit upon her eggs. Fortunately we had a hen that was hatching; her eggs were immediately removed, and the new ones put in their place. The female heath fowl was put into the parrot's cage, and hung up in the room, to accustom it to our society. In less than three days all the chickens were hatched; they kept close to their foster mother, and ate greedily a mixture of sweet acorns bruised in milk.

## CHAPTER XX

# THE RAINY SEASON

FRANCIS for a short time was highly amused with his sword leaves, and then, like all children, who are soon tired of their toys, he grew weary of them, and they were thrown aside. Fritz picked up some of them that were quite soft and withered; holding up one which was pliable as a riband in his hand, "Francis," said he, "you can make whips of your sword grass, and they will be of use in driving your goats and sheep." It had been lately decided that it should be the business of Francis to lead these to pasture.

Fritz accordingly sat down to help him to divide the leaves, and afterwards plait them into whipcords. As they were working, I saw with pleasure the flexibility and strength of the bands: I examined them more closely, and found they were composed of long fibers, or filaments; and this discovery led me to surmise that this supposed sword grass might be a very different thing, and not improbably the flax plant of New Zealand. I knew how much my wife wished for flax, so I hastened to tell her.

"This," said she, "is the most useful thing you have found; lose not a moment in searching for

more of these leaves, and bring me the most you can of them; I will make you stockings, shirts, clothes, thread, ropes—in short, give me flax, looms, and frames, and I shall be at no loss in the employment of it." I could not help smiling at the scope she gave to her imagination on the bare mention of flax; though so much was to be done between the gathering the leaves and having the cloth, she was already sewing in idea.

Fritz whispered a word in Jack's ear; both went to the stable, and, without asking my leave, one mounted Lightfoot, the other the buffalo, and galloped off toward the wood so fast that I had no time to call them back. Their eagerness to oblige their mother in this instance pleaded their forgiveness, and I suffered them to go on without following them.

In a quarter of an hour our deserters came back; like true hussars, they had foraged the woods, and heavily loaded their cattle with the precious plant, which they threw at their mother's feet with joyful shouts.

Next morning the bundles of leaves were carried to Flamingo Marsh, placed in the water, and pressed down with stones. In a fortnight we took the flax out of the water, and spread it on the grass in the sun, where it dried rapidly. Then it was put by till we had time to make beetles, wheels, reels, and carding combs. It was thought best to reserve this

task for the rainy season. Occasional slight showers, the harbingers of winter, had already come on; the temperature, which hitherto had been warm and serene, became gloomy and variable; the sky was often darkened with clouds, and the stormy winds were heard.

Our first care was to dig up a full supply of yams and other roots for bread, with plenty of coconuts and some bags of sweet acorns. It occurred to us, while digging, that, the ground being thus opened and manured with the leaves of plants, we might sow in it to advantage the remainder of our European corn. Notwithstanding all the delicacies this stranger land afforded us, the force of habit still caused us to long for the bread we had been fed with from childhood. We committed it to the earth with little preparation; the season, however, was proper for sowing and planting, as the ensuing rain would moisten and swell the grain, which otherwise would perish in an arid burning soil. We planted the various palm trees we had discovered in our excursions, and formed a large handsome plantation of sugar canes, so as to have hereafter everything useful and agreeable around us.

Unfortunately, the weather changed sooner than we had expected. Before we had completed our winter establishment, the rain fell in such heavy torrents that the whole face of the country seemed changed into a lake.

The first thing to be done was to remove our aërial abode, and to fix our residence at the bottom of the tree, between the roots and under the tarred roof I had erected. It was no longer possible to remain above, on account of the furious winds that threatened to bear us away, and deluged our beds with rain through the large opening in front, our only protection here being a piece of sail cloth, which was soon dripping wet and rent to pieces. In this condition we were forced to take down our hammocks, mattresses, and every article that could be injured by the rain; and most fortunate did we deem ourselves in having made the winding stairs, which sheltered us during the operation of the removal. The stairs served afterwards for a kind of lumber room.

Our little sheds between the roots, constructed for the poultry and the cattle, could scarcely contain us all; and the first days we passed in this manner were painfully embarrassing, crowded all together, and hardly able to move in these almost dark recesses, which the smell from the close adjoining animals rendered almost unbearable. In addition, we were half stifled with smoke whenever we kindled a fire, and drenched with rain when we opened the doors. For the first time since our disaster, we sighed for the comfortable houses of our dear country; but what was to be done? We were not there, and losing our courage and our temper would only increase the evil.

I strove to raise the spirits of my companions, and remove some of the inconveniences. We confined our live stock to a small number, and gave them a freer current of air, dismissing from the stalls those animals that, from their properties, and being natives of the country, would be at no loss in providing for themselves. That we might not lose them altogether we tied bells round their necks; Fritz and I sought and drove them in every evening when they did not return.

As to the smoke, our only remedy was to open the door when we made a fire; and we did without fire as much as we could, living on milk and cheese, and never making one but to bake our cakes; we then used the occasion to boil a quantity of our favorite roots and salt meat enough to last us a number of days. Our dry wood was also nearly expended, and we thanked Heaven the weather was not very cold; for had this been the case, our other trials would have much increased.

The cow, the goats, and even the sheep amply supplied us with milk. Milking, cleaning the animals, and preparing their food, occupied us most of the morning, after which we were usually employed in making flour of the manioc root, with which we filled the large gourds, previously placed in rows. The gloom of the atmosphere and our low windowless dwelling cut off our daylight; fortunately we had laid in a huge store of candles.

When darkness obliged us to light up, we got round the table, where a large taper fixed on a gourd gave us an excellent light, which enabled my wife to sew, while I on my part was forming a journal, and recording the narrative of our shipwreck and residence in this island. To Ernest, who wrote a fine hand, was entrusted the care of writing off my pages in clear script. Fritz and Jack amused themselves by drawing from memory the plants and animals which had most struck their observation; while one and all contributed to teach little Francis to read and write. We concluded the day with a devotional reading in the Holy Bible, performed by each in turn.

It was resolved, however, that we would not pass another rainy season exposed to the same evils; even my gentle-tempered wife was a little ruffled now and then with our inconvenient situation, and insisted more than any of us on the plan of building elsewhere a more spacious winter residence; she wished, however, to return to our castle in the tree every summer, and we all joined with her in that desire. Fritz came forward triumphantly with a book he had found in the bottom of our clothes chest.

"Here," said he, "is our best counselor and model, *Robinson Crusoe;* since Heaven has destined us to a similar fate, whom better can we consult? As far as I remember, he cut himself a house out of

the solid rock. Let us see how he proceeded; we will do the same, and with greater ease, for he was alone; we are six in number, and four of us able to work."

This idea of Fritz was hailed by all. We read the famous history with interest; it seemed, though so familiar, quite new to us; we entered earnestly into every detail, and never failed to feel lively gratitude toward God, who had rescued us all together, and not permitted one only of us to be cast, a solitary being, on the island.

Francis expressed his wish to have a *Man Friday;* Fritz thought it better to be without such a companion, and to have no savages to contend with. Jack was for the savages, warfare, and encounters.

## CHAPTER XXI

# SPRING—THE HOUSE IN THE SALT ROCK

AFTER many tedious and gloomy weeks of rain, the sky began to brighten, the sun to dart its rays on the damp earth, the winds to be lulled, and the state of the air became mild and serene. We issued from our dreary hovels with joyful shouts.

After we had arranged and thoroughly cleaned Falcon's Nest, my wife lost not a moment in resuming the process of her flax. Our sons hastened to lead the cattle to the fresh pastures; whilst it was my task to carry the bundles of flax into the open air, where, by heaping stones together, I contrived an oven sufficiently commodious to dry it well. The same evening we all set to work to peel, and afterwards to beat it and strip off the bark; and lastly to comb it with a carding machine which I had made with nails filed smooth and driven into a sheet of tin. I drew out such distaffs full of long soft flax ready for spinning that my enraptured wife ran to embrace me, to express her thankfulness, requesting me to make her a wheel without delay, that she might enter upon her favorite work. By repeated

endeavors I found means to make a reel and a spinning wheel; and she fell so eagerly to spinning as to allow herself no leisure even for a walk, and scarcely time to cook our dinners.

At Tent House the tempest and rain had beaten down the tent, carried away a part of the sail cloth, and made such havoc among our provisions that by far the largest portion was spotted with mildew. Luckily our handsome pinnace had been for the most part spared; it was still at anchor, ready to serve us in case of need; but our tub boat was too shattered to be of any further service. We were grieved to find the gunpowder, of which I had left three barrels in the tent, the most damaged. The contents of two were rendered wholly useless.

Fritz and Jack were eager to try cutting a cave out of the rock, but I had no hopes of success. Robinson Crusoe found a spacious cavern that merely required arrangement; no such cavity was apparent in our rock, which bore the aspect of extreme solidity. However, I set off one day, accompanied by my two boys, leaving their mother at her spinning with Ernest and Francis. We took with us pickaxes, chisels, hammers, and iron levers, to try what impression we could make on the rock. I chose a part nearly perpendicular, and much better situated than our tent; the view from it was enchanting. I marked out with charcoal the opening we wished to make, and we began. We made so

little progress the first day that, in spite of our courage, we were tempted to give up; we persevered, however, and my hope was somewhat revived as I perceived the stone was of a softer texture as we cut deeper. When I had cut about a foot in depth, we could loosen it with a spade like dried mud.

After a few days we measured the opening, and found we had already advanced seven feet into the rock. Fritz removed the fragments in a barrow, and discharged them in a line before the place, to form a sort of terrace; I applied my own labor to the upper part, to enlarge the opening; Jack, the smallest of the three, was able to get in and cut away below. He had with him a long iron bar sharpened at the end, which he drove in with a hammer to loosen a piece at a time. Suddenly he bawled out, "It is pierced through, father! Fritz, I have pierced it through!"

"Hah, hah, Master Jack at his jokes again! But let us hear, what have you pierced? Is it the mountain? Not perhaps your hand or foot, Jack?" cried I.

"No, no, it is the mountain! Huzza, huzza! I have pierced the mountain!"

Fritz now ran to him. "Come, let us see then. It is no doubt the globe at least you have pierced," said he, in a bantering tone. "You should have pushed on your tool boldly, till you reached Europe, which they say is under our feet."

"Well, then, look! But I hardly know what you will see; come and look how far the iron is gone in, and tell me if it is all my boasting."

"Come hither, father," said Fritz. "This is really extraordinary: his iron bar seems to have got to a hollow place; see, it can be moved in every direction."

I took hold of the bar, which was still in the rock, and working it about, I made a sufficient opening for one of my sons to pass. I observed that in reality the rubbish fell within the cavity, which I judged, from the falling of the stones, was not much deeper than the part we stood on. My two lads offered to go in together and examine it; this, however, I forbade. I even made them remove from the opening, as I smelled the foul air that issued abundantly from it, and began myself to feel giddiness in consequence of having gone too near; so that I was compelled to withdraw quickly, and inhale a purer air.

Under my direction the boys now hastened to gather some dry moss, which they made into bundles; they then struck a light and set fire to them, and threw the moss blazing into the opening. As I had foreseen, the fire was extinguished at the very entrance, thus proving that the air within was highly poisoned. I recollected that we had brought from the vessel a chest that was full of grenades, rockets, and other fireworks, which had been shipped for the

purpose of making signals, as well as for amusement. I sought it hastily, and took some of these, together with an iron mortar for throwing; out of it I laid a train of gunpowder and set fire to the end, which reached to where we stood. A general explosion took place, and an awful report echoed through the dark recess; the lighted grenades flew about on all sides like brilliant meteors, rebounding and bursting with a terrific sound. We then sent in the rockets, which had also a full effect. They hissed in the cavity like flying dragons, disclosing to our astonished view its vast extent. We beheld too, as we thought, numerous dazzling bodies that sparkled suddenly, as if by magic, and disappeared with the rapidity of lightning, leaving the place in total darkness.

After having played off our fireworks, I tried lighted straw; to our great satisfaction, the bundles thrown in were entirely consumed. We could then reasonably hope nothing was to be feared from the air; but there still remained the danger of plunging into some abyss, or of meeting with a body of water. I deemed it more prudent to defer our entrance into this unknown recess till we had lights to guide us through it. I dispatched Jack on the buffalo to Falcon's Stream to tell his mother and brothers of our discovery, directing him to return with them, and bring all the tapers that were left.

When they returned, we lighted some of the

tapers, and, each taking one in his right hand, we entered the rock in solemn procession. The most beautiful and magnificent spectacle presented itself. The sides of the cavern sparkled like diamonds; the light from our tapers was reflected from all parts, and had the effect of a grand illumination. Innumerable crystals of every length and shape hung from the top of the vault, which, uniting with those of the sides, formed pillars, altars, arches, and a variety of other figures, composing the most splendid masses. We might have fancied ourselves in the palace of a fairy, or an illuminated temple.

The floor was level, covered with a white and very fine sand, as if purposely strewed, and so dry that I could not see the least mark of dampness anywhere. All this led me to hope the spot would be healthy and convenient for our proposed residence. The crystals on all sides seemed not to be ordinary rock crystals. I broke off a piece, and found that we were in a grotto of rock salt, found in the earth in solid crystallized masses, generally above a bed of spar or gypsum, and surrounded by layers of fossils or rock. The shape of the crystals, their lack of solidity, and finally their saline taste, were decisive evidences.

Many schemes were formed for converting this magnificent grotto into a convenient and agreeable mansion for our abode. The upper bed of the rock, in front of the cavern, through which my little Jack

had dug so easily, was of a soft nature. I hoped that, being now exposed to the air and the heat of the sun, it would become by degrees as hard and compact as the first layer that had given me so much trouble. So I began, while it retained its soft state, to make openings for the doors and windows of the front. I measured them by those I had fixed in my winding staircase, which were now to be placed in our winter home, being set in grooves in the rock. I took care to preserve in large pieces the stone taken out. These I cut with the saw and chisel into oblongs an inch and a half in thickness, to serve as tiles. I laid them in the sun, and was gratified in seeing they hardened quickly.

When I could enter the cavern freely with a good doorway, and it was lighted by the windows, I erected partitions. A large space was first partitioned off in two divisions; the one on the right was to be our residence, that on the left was to contain the kitchen, stables, and workroom. At the end of the second division, where windows could not be placed, the cellar and storeroom were to be formed.

The side we designed to lodge in was divided into three apartments; the first, next the door, was the bedroom for my wife and me, the second a dining-parlor, and the last a bedroom for the boys. As we had only three windows, we put one in each sleeping room; the third was fixed in the kitchen, where my wife would often be. A grating for the

We entered the rock in solemn procession

present fell to the lot of our dining room, which when too cold was to be exchanged for one of the other apartments. I contrived a good fireplace in the kitchen near the window; I pierced the rock a little above, and four planks nailed together, and passing through this opening, answered the purpose of a chimney. We made the workroom near the kitchen roomy enough for large undertakings; it served also to keep our cart and sledge in. Lastly, the stables, which were formed into four compartments, to separate the different species of animals, occupied all the bottom of the cavern on this side.

During our stay at Tent House, immense turtles were often seen on the shore, where they deposited their eggs in the sand. We thought of getting possession of the turtles for live stock, and of feasting on them whenever we pleased. As soon as we saw one on the sands, one of my boys was despatched to cut off its retreat; meanwhile we approached the animal, and quietly, without doing it any injury, turned it on its back, then passed a long cord through the shell, and tied the end of it to a stake, which we fixed close to the edge of the water. This done, we set the prisoner on its legs again; it hastened into the sea, but could not go beyond the end of the cord; apparently it was all the happier, finding food more easily along shore than out to sea; and we enjoyed the idea of being able to take it when wanted.

A number of sea dogs came into Safety Bay, and ascended the river in search of prey, sporting in the water along shore, without showing any fear of us. The skin of this fish, tanned and dressed, makes excellent leather. I was in great need of it for straps and harness, to make saddles for Fritz and Jack, and to cut up into soles, belts, and pantaloons, of which articles we much wanted a fresh supply. Besides, I knew that the fat yielded good lamp oil, that might be substituted for tapers in the long evenings of winter.

At this time I likewise made some improvements in our sledge. I raised it on two beams, on axle-trees, at the ends of which I put on the four gun-carriage wheels I had taken off the cannon from the vessel; thus I obtained a light and convenient vehicle, of moderate height, on which boxes and casks could be placed. Pleased with the work of the week, we set out with cheerful hearts for Falcon's Stream, to pass our Sunday there.

## CHAPTER XXII

# NEW EXPERIMENTS AND DISCOVERIES

THE building of our house went on quickly enough to afford the hope of our being settled within it by the time of the rainy season.

From the moment I discovered gypsum to be the basis of the crystal salt in our grotto, I foresaw some great advantages I should derive from it. I found on the ground a quantity of fragments of gypsum, and removed them to the kitchen, where we baked a few of the pieces. They rubbed into a powder when cold, which I put carefully into casks for use when the time should come for finishing the interior of our dwelling. My notion was to form the walls for separating the apartments of the squares of stone I had already provided, and to unite them with a cement made of the gypsum.

One day as Jack and I were walking near the mouth of Jackal's River, we perceived immense quantities of a large fish moving slowly toward the banks. The largest resembled sturgeons, while the smallest I pronounced to be salmon.

Jack strutted about in ecstasies. "What say you now, father?" said he. "This is nothing like

your little paltry fry! A single fish of this troop would fill a tub!"

"No doubt," answered I; and with great gravity I added, "pr'ythee, Jack, step into the river, and fling them to me one by one, that I may take them home to salt and dry."

He looked at me for a moment with a sort of vacant doubt if I could possibly be in earnest: then seizing suddenly a new idea—"Wait a moment, father," cried he, "and I will do so." He sprang off like lightning toward the cavern, whence he soon returned loaded with a bow and arrows and a ball of string, to catch, as he assured me, every one of the fishes. To the end of the string he fastened an arrow and a small iron hook; he placed the large ball of string in a hole in the ground, and then he shot off an arrow, which the next instant stuck in one of the largest fishes.

At the same moment Fritz joined us. "Well done, brother Jack," cried he; "but let me, too, have my turn." Saying this, he ran back and fetched the harpoon and the windlass, and returned to us accompanied by Ernest. The salmon that Jack had pierced struggled fiercely, but by degrees its strength was exhausted, and we succeeded in drawing it to a bank, where I put an end to its existence.

Fritz now eagerly seized his harpoon and windlass; I, for my part, like Neptune, wielded a trident; Ernest prepared the large fishing rod; and Jack his

arrow, with the same apparatus as before. Such numbers of fishes presented themselves at the mouth of the river that we had only to choose among them. Jack's arrow, after missing twice, struck the third time a large sturgeon. I too had caught two of the same fish, and had been obliged to go up to the middle in the water to manage my booty. Ernest, with his rod and line and a hook, had also taken two smaller ones. Fritz, with his harpoon, had struck a sturgeon at least eight feet in length, and the skill and strength of our whole company were found necessary to conduct him safe to shore.

On our next visit to Falcon's Stream we found our grain almost ready for reaping. We cut down what was fairly ripe, bound it together in bundles, and conveyed it to a place where it would be secure from the attacks of the birds. We reaped barley, wheat, rye, oats, pease, millet, lentils—only a small quantity of each, it is true, but sufficient to enable us to sow again plentifully at the proper season. The plant that had yielded the most was maize, a proof that it best loved the soil. A surface of land the size of an ordinary field was entirely covered with its splendid golden ears.

The rest of the day was employed in picking the grains of the different sorts of corn from the stalks; we put what we wished to keep for sowing into some gourd shells, and the Turkey wheat was laid carefully aside in sheaves till we should have time to

beat and separate it. Fritz observed that we should also want to grind it; and I reminded him of the hand mill we had secured from the wrecked vessel.

"But, father," he objected, "the hand mill is so small, and so likely to be put out of order. Why should we not contrive a water mill, as they do in Europe? We have surely rapid streams of water."

"This is true; but such a mechanism is more difficult than you imagine. The wheel alone, I think, would be an undertaking far beyond us. At all events, we shall not want a water mill till our harvests are such as to produce plentiful crops of corn."

Next day, walking in a new direction, we came upon a grove of low bushes, to appearance almost covered with flakes of snow. It proved to be a most excellent species of cotton. The ripe pods had burst, and the winds had scattered around their flaky contents; the ground was strewed with them, they had gathered in tufts on the bushes, and they floated gently in the air.

The joy of this discovery was almost too great for utterance. We collected as much cotton as our bags would hold, and my wife filled her pockets with the seed, to raise it in our garden at Tent House.

We now took a direction toward a point of land which skirted the wood of gourds, and being high, commanded a view of the adjacent country. I felt a wish to remove our establishment to the

vicinity of the cotton plantation and the gourd wood. I imagined colonies of animals, both winged and quadruped; and I even thought it might be practicable to erect a sort of farmhouse on the soil, which we might visit occasionally, and be welcomed by the agreeable sounds of the cackling of our feathered subjects, which would forcibly remind us of the customs of our forsaken but ever-cherished country.

My plan for a building was approved by all, and we lost no time in pitching our tent, and forming temporary accommodations for cooking our victuals. I went to find a group of trees to assist me in my plan of erecting a farmhouse. In no long time I found exactly what I wanted, and quite near. I returned to my companions, whom I found busily employed in preparing excellent beds of the cotton, upon which, at an earlier hour than usual, we all retired to rest.

## CHAPTER XXIII

# TWO FARMHOUSES—A LAKE—ATHLETIC CONTESTS

THE trees that I had chosen for the construction of my farmhouse were for the most part one foot in diameter in the trunk; they presented the form of a fairly regular oblong, with its longest side to the sea, the length twenty-four feet, and the breadth sixteen. I cut little hollow places in the trunks, ten feet apart, one above the other, to form two stories. I then inserted beams five inches in diameter in the grooves, and thus formed the skeleton of my building. We next nailed some laths from tree to tree, at equal distances from each other, to form the roof, and placed on them a covering composed of pieces of the bark of trees, cut into the shape of tiles, and in a sloping position, for the rain to run off in the wet season. As we had very few iron nails, we used the strong pointed thorn of the acacia, which we had discovered the day before. Laid in the sun to dry, they became as hard as iron.

We formed the walls with matted reeds interwoven with pliant laths to the height of six feet; the remaining space to the roof was enclosed with only

a simple grating, that the air and light might be admitted. A door was placed in the middle of the front.

We next arranged the interior, dividing it halfway up by a partition wall into two unequal parts; the largest was intended for the sheep and goats, and the smallest for ourselves, when we should wish to pass a few days here. At the farther end of the stable we fixed a house for the fowls, and above it a sort of hayloft for the forage. Before the door of entrance we placed two benches, contrived as well as we could of laths and odd pieces of wood, that we might rest ourselves under the shade of the trees, and enjoy the exquisite prospect which presented itself on all sides. Our own apartment was provided with a couple of the best bedsteads we could make of twigs of trees, raised upon four legs, two feet from the ground, and these were destined to receive our cotton mattresses.

One day as I rambled with Ernest about the neighborhood, following the winding of a river toward the middle of the wall of rocks, our course was interrupted by a marsh which bordered a small lake. The whole surface of the swampy soil was covered with a kind of wild rice, ripe on the stalk. As we approached, a loud rustling was heard, and we distinguished on the wing, bustards, Canada heath fowl, and great numbers of smaller birds. We succeeded in bringing down five or six of them.

Presently we saw Master Knips jump from Flora's back, smell along the ground among some thick growing plants, then pluck off something with his two paws, and eat of it voraciously. We ran to the spot to see what it could be, when, to the relief of our parched palates, we found he had discovered there the largest and finest kind of strawberry.

Pursuing our way a little farther along the marsh, we reached the lake, situated in a deep and abrupt valley. No one who is not a native of Switzerland can conceive the emotion which trembled at my heart as I gazed at this limpid, azure, rippling body of water, the faithful miniature of so many grand originals which I had probably lost sight of forever. My eyes swam with tears! Alas! a single glance upon the surrounding picture, the different characters of the trees, the vast ocean in the distance, destroyed the momentary illusion, and brought back my ideas to the painful reality, that I and mine were—strangers in a desert island!

Another sort of object now presented itself to prove that we were no longer inhabitants of Europe. It was the appearance of a quantity of swans gliding over the surface of the lake; but their color, instead of white, like those of our country, was a jetty black, and their plumage had so high a gloss as to produce, reflected on the water, the most astonishing effect. The six large feathers of the wings of this bird are white, exhibiting a singular contrast to the rest of

the body; in other respects these birds were remarkable, like those of Europe, for the haughty grace of their motions.

The following day we climbed the height near Cape Disappointment. From here we had a view over the country which surrounded Falcon's Stream in one direction, and in others of a rich landscape of sea, land, and rocks. When we had paused for a short time upon the beauties of the scene, we agreed that it should be on this spot we would build our second cottage. A spring of the clearest water issued from the soil near the summit, and flowed over its sloping side, forming agreeable cascades in its rapid course; in short, every feature of the picture contributed to form a landscape worthy the homage of a taste the most delicate and refined.

"Let us build here," exclaimed I, "and call the spot—*Arcadia.*"

We lost no time in again setting to work. This building contained a dining room, two bedchambers, two stables, and a storeroom for preserving all kinds of provisions for man and beast. We formed the roof square, with four sloped sides, and the whole had really the appearance of a European cottage. It was finished in the short space of six days.

What now remained to be done was to fix on a tree fit to make a boat to replace the tub boat. After much search, I at length found one of huge

size, the bark of which we stripped and shaped with great labor, and put it in the sun to harden and fix. When it was dry, there were added to the boat a keel, a neat lining of wood, a small flat floor, benches, a small mast and triangular sail, a rudder, and a thick coat of pitch on the outside, so that the first time we saw her in the water we were all in ecstasies at the charming appearance she made.

We had still much to do to finish our abode in the grotto. We made the internal divisions of planks and that which separated us from the stables of stone. We plastered over the walls of the principal apartments on each side with the greatest care, finishing them by pressure with a flat smooth board, and lastly a wash of size, in the manner of the plasterers in Europe. This ornamental portion of our work amused us all so much that we began to think we might venture a step farther in European luxury, and agreed that we would attempt to make some carpets with the hair of our goats. To this effect we spread out some sail cloth, which my wife had joined in breadths. We next strewed the goats' hair, mixed with wool obtained from the sheep, over the whole; on this surface we threw some hot water, in which a strong cement had been dissolved; the whole was then rolled up, and was beaten for a considerable time with hard sticks. The sail cloth was now unrolled, and the inside again sprinkled, rolled, and beaten as before. This process was con-

tinued till the substance had become a sort of felt, which could be separated from the sail cloth, and was lastly put in the sun to harden. We thus produced a very tolerable substitute for that enviable article of European comfort, a carpet.

Thus, as will be perceived, we had made the first steps toward a condition of civilization; separated from society, condemned, perhaps, to pass the remainder of life in this desert island, we yet possessed the means of happiness; we had all the necessaries, and many of the comforts, desired by human beings.

Nor did my wife and I forget that young people need amusement. There were days of which we made holidays; and one of these was the day when our home in the grotto was finished. We celebrated it with foot races, shooting contests, and exhibits of skill in riding. In the midst of this last sport, little Francis rode into the arena, mounted on his young bull "Broumm," who was not more than three or four months old; my wife had made him a saddle of kangaroo skin, with stirrups adjusted to his little legs, and there he sat, a whip in his right hand, and the bridle of his animal in the left. He had come to show off his horsemanship, too.

As he guided his steed, the boy was more cool and calm than those of his age are apt to be. But what I admired most was the docility of the animal. My wife looked on with maternal pride to see the

success of her dear pupil, and Francis was unanimously proclaimed an excellent horseman.

After the horsemanship, the swimming occupied some time; they also climbed the trees; and, after we had finished our gymnastics, I announced that the rewards would now be distributed, and that the crowns would shade the brows of the victors.

Everyone hastened to the grotto, which had been lighted up with all the torches we possessed; my wife, as queen of the day, was installed in an elevated seat, decorated with flowers, and I called up the winners to receive the rewards, which their mother distributed to each one.

Fritz—conqueror at shooting and swimming—received a superb English rifle, and a hunting knife, which he had long wished for. Ernest had for the reward of the race a splendid gold watch. Jack—the cavalier—obtained a magnificent pair of steel spurs and a whip of whalebone. Little Francis received a pair of stirrups and a box of colors as a reward for the industry he had displayed in educating his bull. All these things had been among our possessions in the chests saved from the wreck.

## CHAPTER XXIV

# THE DOVECOT AND ITS MANAGEMENT

ONE day when we were snaring the thrushes and other little birds that at this season were so plentiful, we found among the rest two pairs of the wood pigeons that we had brought from the wreck and set free among the trees. We put them in a cage and resolved to build a dovecot at the grotto, where we now lived most of the time. We hollowed out a space in the rock large enough to contain twenty pairs of pigeons; two perches ran through the whole length, and, projecting out in front, with a board nailed across, formed a platform, which we protected by a slight roof; a door with a hole to admit light closed the front; and a rope ladder suspended from one of the perches enabled us to mount up, and look after the pigeons.

"There is the dwelling," said I to Fritz, "but where are the inhabitants? We must find a way to force our wild stranger pigeons to dwell in the new home we have provided for them; and, besides, they must not only remain themselves, but must bring their companions with them."

"It appears to me, father, that nothing short of magic will do it."

"Magic or not, I am going to try it. It is to a pigeon merchant that I owe the secret which I am about to put into practice. It consists in perfuming a new dovecot with anise. The pigeons, it is said, are so fond of the odor of this plant that they will return every night to breathe its perfume."

"Nothing can be easier," replied Fritz. "The other day Jack found and planted some roots of anise. We can break the seeds on a stone; and if the oil is not as pure as that of the chemists, it will not be less useful or less aromatic."

We then proceeded to make the oil of anise. I rubbed the door of the dovecot, the perches, and every place where the pigeons could touch either feet or wings with it. I then mixed a sort of dough with anise, salt, and clay, and, after having placed it in the middle of the dovecot, we put in the pigeons, which we had kept in willow baskets while their house was building. We shut them up, with provision for two days, and then left them to enjoy at their leisure the odor of the anise.

At the end of that time, when we looked in, our prisoners appeared to have become quite tame; and when I entered, they took no more notice of me than a domestic pigeon would have done.

Two days more passed away. On the third we opened the door to let the prisoners out.

The pigeons poked their heads cautiously out of the hole, then advanced on the platform, and suddenly soared up to such a height that they were lost to our sight. But in a few moments they again flew down, and settled, tranquilly, upon the platform they had just quitted.

I cried out, in the most serious manner, "I knew very well, when they flew up in the clouds, that they were not lost."

"How could you possibly know that?" said Ernest.

"Because my charms have attached them to the dovecot," was my answer.

Fritz alone knew of my trick with the anise, so neither of the other boys understood.

"Charms!" cried Jack, "are you, then, a magician, papa?"

"Simpleton!" replied Ernest, "who ever *heard* of magicians?"

At that moment the pigeons, who had been quietly picking on the ground, attracted our attention. The two Molucca pigeons suddenly quitted their European brothers, and flew off in the direction of Falcon's Nest with such rapidity that soon they were lost to our view.

"Adieu, gentlemen," cried Jack, as they darted away, taking his hat off and making a thousand faces. "Adieu, a pleasant trip to you."

My wife and Francis commenced to deplore the loss of our two handsome pigeons, while I, pre-

serving as serious a look as possible, stretched out my hands, and, turning to the direction in which the pigeons flew, I murmured, half aloud, the following words:

"Fly, little ones, fly far, far away; till tomorrow you may stay; but then, return with your companions."

I then turned toward my family, who stood stupefied with astonishment, not knowing what to make out of my serious address to the departed pigeons.

As for the other pigeons, they did not seem disposed to follow their companions, but appeared completely tamed: they had found the dovecot of Europe with its shelter, and there they gladly remained.

We passed the rest of the day in the neighborhood of the dovecot; we often strained our eyes in the direction of Falcon's Nest, but nothing appeared. The evening came, and the European pigeons slept alone in their palace.

About noon next day we saw Jack running furiously toward us, clapping his hands, and screaming out:

"He has returned! He has returned!"

"Who? who?" was eagerly asked.

"The blue pigeon!" he answered, "the blue pigeon! Quick! quick! come and see him!"

We ran to the dovecot, and, besides the blue pigeon, we found with him, on one of the outer

perches of the house, his mate, whom he was trying to persuade to venture into the interior. He would put in his head, and then return to her, until at last he prevailed, and we had the satisfaction of seeing her enter the pigeon house.

My sons would have immediately closed the door, but I prevented them, saying that some time or other it must be opened. "And besides," I added, "how are the other pigeons to enter if we close the door?"

"I begin to think," said my wife, at last, "that there is something extraordinary in this; and, unless you have used some enchantment, I cannot comprehend it."

"It is chance—pure chance," interrupted Ernest.

"Chance!" replied I, laughing; "that will do very well for one time, but when the other pigeon returns this evening, with his mate, will you think *that* chance?"

"Impossible!" answered he, "the same phenomenon could not happen twice in a day."

While we were thus speaking, Fritz suddenly interrupted us; his eagle eyes had perceived the birds we were expecting.

"What do you say now, my little doctor?" said I to Ernest. "Both pairs of pigeons have now returned."

"I do not know what to say," he answered seriously. "It certainly appears very extraordinary;

but as for any magic being employed, I will not believe it."

"It gives me pleasure to see that you are not superstitious; but if a third pair of Molucca pigeons should visit us today, would you call that chance also?"

Ernest did not answer; but his silence showed that he was far from being convinced.

About two hours later, we saw our little Francis come running toward us. When he came near, he drew up his little form, and, bowing haughtily, commenced the following speech:

"Most high and mighty lords, I am here to invite you, on the part of my good mother, to come and behold the prince of pigeons, who, with his noble spouse, has come to take possession of the magnificent palace you have provided for him."

"You are welcome for your good news, Mr. Messenger," was the answer.

We hastened to the dovecot, where my wife, after cautioning us to make no noise, pointed out to us two superb birds, whom those inside were trying to persuade to enter.

"I give up," said Ernest, at last, "my little knowledge cannot comprehend it. I beg of you, papa, to explain."

I explained to him, in detail, all that we had done. Jack laughed heartily on hearing that his plant of anise had been the charm which had so

puzzled them. Soon the pigeons were settled, and had begun to build their nests. I observed among the articles they gathered for that purpose a sort of long, gray moss, which I had seen hanging from the branches of old trees. I recognized it as being the same thing as is exported from India as a substitute for horsehair in the manufacture of mattresses.

I made this discovery known to my good wife, and one can easily imagine that my news was well received; for it added another treasure to our domestic riches, and afforded promise of some fine mattresses.

We found, from time to time, in the soil of the dovecot, nutmegs, which, doubtless, the pigeons of Molucca had brought over. We washed them, and, although they were deprived of their silky covering, we planted them, without much hope of their ever sprouting.

## CHAPTER XXV

# JACK'S NARROW ESCAPE— ANOTHER RAINY SEASON

JACK one day set off on an expedition, the purpose of which nobody but himself had any knowledge of; but his absence was not long, for we soon saw him returning, covered from head to foot with a thick, black mud, and dragging after him a bundle of Spanish rushes, likewise covered with mud.

"Where have you been," said I, "to dirty yourself so?"

"In Flamingo Marsh."

"Why, what in the name of common sense were you doing there?"

"Alas!" answered the poor boy, as he heaved a deep sigh, "I wanted to get some Spanish osiers to make nests for the pigeons."

"A praiseworthy intention," said I. "It was not your fault that the enterprise did not succeed well."

"Oh, no; and if it had not been for these bundles of rushes, I should certainly have lost my life. I wanted some thin, flexible rushes; those on the borders of the swamp were too large, and I advanced farther into the marsh, jumping from hummock to hummock until I came to a spot where the only

footing was a mass of soft, black mud; my feet slipped in, and I found myself up to my knees in the compound; and, gradually sinking deeper, I commenced screaming at the top of my voice; but nobody heard me, except my jackal, who came running up to me, and tried to assist me by howling with all his might."

"But why," said Ernest, "did you not try to swim? You excel all of us in swimming."

"Fine advice, truly; I would like to see you swimming in a swamp, up to your neck in mud, and surrounded by a thick forest of willows. When I perceived that neither my cries nor those of the jackal produced any good, I endeavored to draw myself out; for I was sinking fast, and had no time to lose. I took my knife from my pocket, and cut, from the willows that surrounded me, two large bundles, and, placing one under each arm, they served me as a sort of hold. I then exerted all my strength, and, by moving my body, my arms, and my legs, I managed to raise myself up a little. All this time my jackal stood on the edge of the marsh, howling with all his might. I whistled him to me, and, grasping hold of his tail at last, with great difficulty, I reached terra firma."

"God be praised, my poor child," said I, "that you have been preserved to us! But the risk was great, and you may thank your jackal that you are alive."

His mother hastened to wash and clean the poor adventurer; his entire suit was put to soak in the Jackal's River.

I profited by the willows that Jack had brought, to commence making a weaving machine for my wife.

Two rushes, split lengthwise, and wound round with packthread, so that they would dry without bending, formed four bars to make that part of the machine called the "combs." I made my sons cut me a quantity of little pieces of wood, to make the teeth for the combs; and when I had procured these first materials for my construction, I put them aside, saying nothing to anybody, as I wished the machine to be a surprise to my wife.

"What are you going to make with all those sticks?" asked my wife, with curiosity.

"Oh, nothing but a whim of mine," I answered, laughing. "I intend to make you a superb instrument of music, such as the Hottentots have called a *gom-gom*. Let me alone, and I promise you that you shall be the first to dance to its melodious sounds."

About this time our onagra gave birth to a beautiful little ass of its species. It was received with pleasure, for it not only added to our number of useful animals, but also afforded us a courser that in future time would make quite a figure in our cavalcades. I gave it the name of "Rapid."

The approach of the rainy season and the remembrance of the trouble we had had in collecting our animals last year, made us teach them to return to their homes at the sound of a conch, in which I had placed a bit of wood, like a flute. The pigs were the only ones that we could not manage. They were unruly and loved their liberty too much to be confined; we willingly abandoned them, as the dogs could easily bring them together if desired.

Among the comforts with which we had surrounded our winter dwelling we yet wanted a reservoir of pure water, which we were obliged to bring from the Jackal's River. I conceived the idea of bringing a stream of water from the river to the grotto, and to establish a fountain, as we had done at Falcon's Nest. Bamboo canes, fitted into one another, served us for canals; we rested them on crutches of wood, and a barrel sunk in the ground performed the office of a basin. Although this lacked elegance, it answered our purpose; and my wife assured me she was just as contented with the little fountain as if it had been built of marble, and surrounded by dolphins and naiads, spouting water from their mouths.

Meantime, as the season of rains was fast approaching, we used all possible speed to get in everything necessary—grain, fruits of all sorts, potatoes, rice, guavas, sweet acorns, pineapples, anise, manioc, bananas. Nothing, in short, was forgotten. We

sowed our seeds as we had done the year before, hoping that the European sorts would sprout more easily on account of the moisture of the atmosphere.

As we had planted our corn and wheat at different times, we were obliged to choose out the ripe stalks from a whole field. I resolved to devise some plan for a more regular cultivation the next year. We had a pair of buffaloes for all the labor that would have to be done; and all that was required, in addition to our present stock of harness, was a double yoke, which I intended to make during the winter.

But the rains had already commenced; several times we had been visited by heavy showers. By degrees the horizon became covered with thick clouds, the winds swept fearfully along the coast, the billows rose, and for the space of fifteen days we were witnesses of a scene of whose majesty and terrific grandeur man cannot form an idea. Nature seemed overturned, the trees bent to the terrible blasts, the lightning and the thunder were mingled with the wind and the storm; in one word, it was a concert of Nature's many voices, where the deep tones of the thunder served for the bass, and harmoniously blended with the sharp whistlings of the storm. It seemed to us that the storm of last year had been nothing in comparison to it. Nevertheless, the winds began to calm, and the rain, instead of beating down upon us in torrents, began to fall with that

dull, deadly sameness, which we felt would last for twelve long weeks. The first moments were sad enough, but, since we must make the best of it, we began as cheerfully as possible to arrange the interior of our cave.

I have said that our apartments were all on one floor; but the ground had not been carefully leveled, and we set to work to fill up the cavities and cut away the projections, so as to prevent any of us from breaking our necks. We also made tables and chairs. But there was yet an inconvenience. We had not imagined we wanted light. There were but three openings in the grotto besides the door: one in the kitchen, one in the workroom, and a third in my sleeping chamber. The boys' room, and all the rest of our dwelling, was plunged in the most complete darkness. I discovered that three or four more windows were necessary; but they could not be made before the return of fine weather, and I devised the following remedy for the defect.

Among the bamboos that I had procured as leaders for the water, was one of great size, which I had preserved. This bamboo I found by chance was just the height of our grotto. I trimmed it, and planted it in the ground about a foot deep, surrounding it with props to make it steady. I then gave Jack a hammer, a pulley, and a rope, and, appealing to his agility, I asked him to climb the pole. In a moment he was at the top, and, after

having driven the pulley into the roof of the grotto, and thrown the cord over it, he descended safely to the ground. I then hung to one end of the cord a large lantern which we found in the ship. Thanks to the glittering rock which lined the sides of the cave, our grotto was as light as if it had been broad day.

Ernest and Francis charged themselves with the task of arranging our library, and disposing, on its different shelves, the works we had saved from the wreck. Jack aided his mother in the kitchen; and Fritz, being stronger than his brothers, assisted me in the workroom.

We arranged there, by the window, a superb English turning lathe, with all its equipments. I had often amused myself by turning in my younger days, and I now could put my knowledge of the art to some use. We also constructed a forge; anvils were fixed in large blocks of wood, and all the tools of the wheelwright and the cooper were laid out in long array on the racks I had put up next the wall. Our shop began to assume a business-like appearance, of which I was proud; and often did I congratulate myself that I had sufficiently acquainted myself, in youth, with mechanics to prevent their being entirely new to me.

The grotto every day grew more agreeable, and we were enabled to wait patiently for the welcome light of the sun. We had our workroom, our din-

ing room, and our library, where we could refresh our minds after the fatigues of the body; for the cases we had saved from the ship contained a quantity of books which had belonged to the captain and officers. Besides Bibles and books of devotion, we found works on history, botany, philosophy, voyages, and travels, some enriched with engravings, which were a real treasure to us. We had also maps, several mathematical and astronomical instruments, and a portable globe—an English invention, which blew up like a balloon; but the sort of works which prevailed were grammars and dictionaries of different nations. They generally form the chief stock of ship libraries.

We all knew a little of French, for this is as much in use as German throughout Switzerland. Fritz and Ernest had commenced to learn English at Zurich, and I had myself paid some attention to the language in order to superintend their education. I now urged them to continue their studies, as English was the language of the sea, and there were very few ships that did not contain someone who understood it. Jack, who knew nothing at all, began to pay some attention to Spanish and Italian, the pomp and melody of these two languages according with his character. As for myself, I labored hard to master the Malay tongue; for the inspection of charts and maps convinced me that we were in the neighborhood of these people.

Our grotto grew every day so comfortable that the children could not think of any name suitable to call it by: some wanted it called The Fairy Palace, others The Shining Grotto; but after a long discussion we came to the conclusion that it should be called simply "Felsenheim," or the dwelling in the rock. Time rolled away so rapidly in all these occupations that two months of the rainy season had elapsed, and I had not yet found time to make my double yokes, or a new pair of carding combs, that my wife had teased me for a long time.

## CHAPTER XXVI

# A WHALE AND ITS USES

THE end of the month of August was marked by a renewal of the bad weather. The rain, the winds, the thunder redoubled with new fury. How happy we were in the dwelling we had made. What would have become of us in our airy palace at Falcon's Nest? And our tent, how could that have withstood the storm? But at last the weather became more settled; the clouds scattered; the rain ceased; and we were able to venture out from our grotto to see whether the world yet remained firm.

We promenaded upon the belt of rocks that extended all along the coast; and, as we had need of liberty and exercise, we took pleasure in scaling the highest peaks, and looking over the plain which was spread out beneath us. Fritz, always daring, and whose eye almost rivaled that of his eagle, was standing upon the peak of rocks, when he perceived, upon the little island in Flamingo Bay, a black spot, the nature and form of which he could not determine; but he thought it was a shipwrecked vessel. Ernest, who mounted after him, took it for a sea lion. I determined to go and inspect it my-

self. We walked down to the seashore, emptied the rain water from the canoe, and all set off.

At last, when we were near enough to distinguish it, what was our surprise to see an enormous whale, lying on his side upon the strand.

Being ignorant whether he was dead or sleeping, I did not think it prudent to approach without precaution; consequently we turned around and steered for the other side of the island, which consisted of nothing more than a sand bank elevated above the waves; but a rank growth of herbs and plants covered it, and it was the resort of numbers of sea birds, whose nests and eggs we found in abundance.

There were two roads to choose by which to reach the whale: one by climbing over the rocks, which rendered it laborious; the other longer, but far the less fatiguing. I took the first path, and commanded the boys to take the other, as I wished to examine fully this little island, which wanted but trees to render it charming. From this elevation I could see the whole coast, from Tent House to Falcon's Nest, which spectacle made me almost forget the whale; and when I reached the side where my children were, they came running toward me, screaming with joy, and carrying their hats full of shells and coral, which they had picked up on the beach. "Look, papa," said they, "what beautiful shells we have found. What can have brought them here?"

"It is the sea, my children," I answered. "The sea has thrown them up from its abyss. She brings such frail, light things as these shells, and yet she has thrown upon our shores this huge monster."

Discovering that the whale was dead, we rowed ashore to get hatchets, saws, and knives. Towing some barrels in which to put the blubber, we returned to our prize.

Our whale looked like those of Greenland; the back was greenish black, the stomach yellowish, the fins and tail black. I immediately measured it, and I found that it was between sixty and seventy feet long, and about forty in diameter, which is about the ordinary size of these monsters of the deep. My children were astonished at the head, which formed a third of the whole creature; its mouth was immense; and its jaws, which were full twelve feet in length, were furnished with flexible appendages which in Europe form the article of commerce known as whalebone. One thing which struck Fritz was the smallness of the monster's eye, which was not larger than that of an ox; and the opening from his mouth into his throat was scarcely the diameter of my arm.

Fritz and Jack entered the head of the whale, and working with the hatchet and the saw, cut out more than two hundred pieces of whalebone of different sizes. While this was going on, Ernest and I cut several feet deep into the fat which covered the

sides of the animal; we literally swam in grease, for walls of solid fat rose on each side of us. But we were not long the only claimants for the whale. A multitude of winged robbers surrounded us. They flew round and round our heads, then, gradually approaching, they were so bold as to snatch pieces of fat from our hands. I cut from the back of the whale a large band of skin, out of which I wanted to make a harness for the ass and the two buffaloes. It was a difficult task, for the skin was thick and hard to cut. The tubs, full of fat, were placed in the canoe, and we set out for the coast.

The next morning we found the island covered with gulls and other marine birds, who, in spite of the canvas with which the pieces that had been cut from the whale were covered, had made a plentiful meal. Our guns were necessary to drive away this horde of pillagers.

We stripped off every article of clothing excepting our pantaloons; then, like true butchers, we opened the animal, and selected from the mass of entrails those which would best suit our purpose. I cut them in pieces of from six to twelve feet long, and, after having turned them inside out, washed them, and well rubbed them with sand; they were then placed in the boat. The reason that I had taken so much trouble to obtain the whale's intestines was that I wished to use them as vessels to contain the oil.

When we arrived at home, the sight of our greasy clothes almost frightened my wife, at the thought of washing them; but I consoled her by promising miracles from the rich treasures of whale oil. We at once proceeded to squeeze out as much oil as possible from the fat, and then to reduce the rest to liquid over a slow fire.

## CHAPTER XXVII

# THE ROWING MACHINE—A TURTLE DRIVE

WHILE we were occupied in our manufacture of oil, my wife proposed to establish a new colony on the island of the whale. "We will put some fowls there," said she. "They will be safe from their two great plagues, the monkeys and the jackals."

I liked the project of my wife very much; and the children were so enchanted that they wanted to start immediately. I calmed their ardor by mentioning an idea I had of fitting a propelling machine to the canoe.

"Oh," cried Jack, "the canoe will go along without any rowing; how fine it will be!"

"Stop, stop," said I, "not so fast. All that I can do will be to save your arms some labor, and quicken our speed."

I immediately commenced the work. All my materials consisted of the wheel of a smokejack and an iron-toothed axle upon which it turned. The machine that I constructed was not a masterpiece; but it answered the purpose very well. A handle attached to the wheel put the machine in motion,

and two large flat pieces of whalebone, nailed together in the form of a cross, and fixed at each end of the axle, resembled the wheels of a steamboat. When the handle was turned, the wings of whalebone beat against the surface of the water, and drove the canoe forward. Its speed was in proportion to the power imparted to the wheel.

My children were delighted when they saw the canoe gliding over the surface of the water. I was astonished myself at the rapidity of our course. We had scarcely touched the land when everyone was in the boat, and begging me to make an excursion to the island of the whale. It was too late for that; but next morning early we set out on a grand trial of our vessel by an excursion, by sea, to the farmhouse at Prospect Hill, for the purpose of inspecting our colony there.

The strong current of the Jackal's River soon brought us into the sea; the breeze was good, and everything promised a favorable sail.

When we had arrived opposite the "Wood of Monkeys," I ran the boat into a little creek, and landed. It was with feelings of the keenest pleasure that we heard the crowing of the cocks through the woods, announcing the neighborhood of the farmhouse. As we rapidly neared Prospect Hill, we could plainly distinguish the bleating of our little herd.

Everything was in order; but what greatly astonished us was the wildness of the sheep and goats,

who fled on all sides at our approach. My sons began to run after them; but as the long-bearded ladies were far more agile than they were, they soon grew tired of the chase, and, drawing from their pockets the strings with balls attached, they soon captured three or four of the fugitives. We distributed some potatoes and a handful of salt among them, in return for which they yielded us several bowls of most delicious milk.

I started out with Fritz to gather sugar cane. I also dug up some roots of this precious article to plant on Whale Island, to which, after dinner, we set sail.

On landing, my first care was to plant the roots I had brought from Prospect Hill; my companions ran off to the beach to gather shells. My good wife and I had scarcely commenced to plant when Jack came running up to us, all out of breath. "Papa, papa," cried he, "come here—quick, I have discovered the skeleton of a mammoth!"

I burst into a laugh, and informed my little boy that his skeleton was nothing more than the carcass of our whale.

"No, no," replied he, "they are not fish bones, but those of some immense animal; and, besides, they lie a great deal farther up on the sand than the whale did."

Jack implored and entreated so earnestly that I consented at last to go; but another voice soon stopped my progress.

"Run, run—this way," screamed Fritz, from some distance, waving his hand to hasten my arrival. "Quick—a monstrous turtle that we are not strong enough to turn." I caught up two handspikes and ran, as fast as possible, to the spot, where I found Ernest struggling with a monstrous turtle, which he held by one leg, but which, despite all his efforts, had reached the border of the sea. I arrived just in time; and, throwing one of the spikes to Fritz, we were able to turn the enormous animal on its back.

It was about eight feet and a half in length, and could not possibly weigh less than five hundred pounds. I did not know how we should be able to carry it away; however, the position in which we had placed it gave us time for reflection.

But Jack had not forgotten his mammoth, and continued teasing me to go and see it. I soon perceived that it really was our whale; but the birds of prey had not left a morsel of flesh on the bones, which had blanched in the sun. I showed him our footprints in the sand, and some morsels of whalebone which we had forgotten.

The giant turtle was now our grand object. I brought the boat round to where he lay extended on his back, and, forming a circle around him, we debated as to the means of transporting him.

"Instead of our carrying this monster," I said at last, "let him conduct *us* back to Felsenheim. A

turtle makes an excellent equipage on the sea; Fritz and I have tried the experiment."

My idea was a happy one, and everyone was glad. I commenced by emptying out the barrel of water we had brought; then, turning the turtle over on his feet, we fastened the barrel to his back, so that it was impossible for him to sink and draw us with him; a cord, passed through a hole which we broke in the upper shell, served me for reins; and without losing time we all embarked for home. I placed myself in the prow of the canoe, with a hatchet to cut the cord in case of need.

We arrived safely at Felsenheim, and our first care was to secure our turtle by strong ropes. We finished his life the next morning, and his enormous shell was destined to serve as a basin to our fountain in the grotto. The work cost some trouble and time, as it was very difficult to detach the flesh from the shell. It was a superb piece of meat, full six feet by three, and afforded us material for many a delicious pot of soup. We inquired into all our works on natural history, and we came to the conclusion that our turtle was the giant green turtle, the largest of all.

## CHAPTER XXVIII

# A DANGEROUS VISITOR

ABOUT this time I completed the weaving machine for my wife. Our garments had become so tattered and torn that the machine was of great benefit to us. It was neither perfect nor handsome, but nothing more could be expected. As we had none of the wheat flour that the weavers use to make paste, which they employ in hardening the warp, and preventing the threads from tangling, I substituted the glue of fish. From this fish glue I also made windowpanes, not good for windows exposed to the rain, but satisfactory for ours, which were protected from storm.

My little cavaliers had long tormented me to make them saddles and bridles, and our beasts had need of yokes and other harness. I commenced my work as saddler; kangaroos and sea dogs furnished me with the necessary leather, and I used for wadding the moss that the Molucca pigeons had discovered to us. In a short time we had saddles and stirrups, bits and bridles, yokes and collars.

Next we tried the making of baskets. Our first attempts were clumsy enough, and we reserved them for our potato baskets. We gradually improved,

and when I thought we were skilful enough, I ventured to use those Spanish rushes that had cost Jack so dear, and we made a number of fine baskets.

One day in the midst of our basket making, Fritz, whose eagle eye was always making discoveries, suddenly started up as if frightened at a cloud of dust which had arisen on the other side of the river, in the direction of Falcon's Nest.

"There is some large animal there," said he, "to judge from the dust it has raised; besides, it is plainly coming in this direction."

"I cannot imagine what it is," I answered. "Our large animals are in the stable."

"Probably two or three sheep, or, perhaps, our sow, frolicking in the sand," observed my wife.

"No, no," replied Fritz, quickly, "it is some singular animal. I can perceive its movements; it rolls and unrolls itself alternately; I can see the rings of which it is formed. See, it is raising itself up, and looks like a huge mast in the dust; it advances—stops—marches on; but I cannot distinguish either feet or legs."

I ran for the spyglass we had saved from the wreck, and directed it toward the dust.

"I can see it plainly," said Fritz; "it has a greenish colored body. What do you think of it, papa?"

"That we must fly as fast as possible, and entrench ourselves in the grotto."

"What do you think it is?"

"A serpent—a huge serpent, advancing directly for us."

"Shall I run for the guns, to be ready to receive him?"

"Not here. The serpent is too powerful to permit of our attacking him, unless we are ourselves in a place of safety."

We hastened to gain the interior of the grotto, and prepared to receive our enemy. It was a boa constrictor, and he advanced so quickly that it was too late to take up the boards on Family Bridge.

We watched all his movements, and saw him stretching out his enormous length along the bank of the river. From time to time the reptile would raise up the forepart of his body twenty feet from the ground, and turn his head gently from right to left, as if seeking for his prey, while he darted a triple-barbed tongue from his half-open jaws. He crossed the bridge, and directed his course straight for the grotto: we had barricaded the door and the windows as well as we were able, and ascended into the dovecot, to which we had made an interior entrance; we passed our muskets through the holes in the door, and waited silently for the enemy—it was the silence of terror.

But the boa, in advancing, had perceived the traces of man's handiwork, and he came on hesitatingly, until at last he stopped, about thirty paces

directly in front of our position. He had scarcely advanced thus far when Ernest, more through fear than through any warlike ardor, discharged his gun, and thus gave a false signal. Jack and Francis followed his example; and my wife, whom the danger had rendered bold, also discharged her gun.

The monster raised his head; but either because none of the shots had touched him, or because the scales of his skin were impenetrable to balls, he appeared to have received no wound. Fritz and I then fired, but without any noticeable effect, and the serpent glided away toward the marsh which our ducks and geese inhabited, and disappeared in the rushes.

The fear of our terrible neighbor kept us shut up three days in our retreat—three long days of anguish and alarm—during which time I allowed no one to go out except for water from the fountain. The monster had given us no signs of his presence, and we would have supposed him departed, either through the marsh, or by some unknown passage in the rock, if the agitation which reigned among our ducks and geese had not assured us of his presence. Every evening the whole colony of fowls, making a terrible noise, would sail away for Whale Island, where they found a safe refuge.

I was afraid that a direct attack might cost us the lives of one or more of our little family. Our dogs could do nothing against such a foe; and to

have exposed any one of our beasts of burden would have been certain destruction to it. On the other hand, our provisions daily diminished, as the season was not yet far enough advanced for us to have laid in any winter stores. In a word, we were in a most deplorable situation, when there came to our aid our poor old jackass, the companion of our wanderings, and faithful servant.

The fodder that we happened to have in the grotto had diminished frightfully: it was necessary to nourish the cow, as she contributed in great part to our living, and some food must be taken from the other animals. I resolved to set them at liberty, and let them provide for their own nourishment. It was better than to see us all dying of hunger, shut up in the grotto. I thought that if we could get them on the other side of the river they would find a plentiful supply of food, and be in safety as long as the boa remained buried in the rushes. I was afraid to cross Family Bridge, lest I should arouse the monster, and I decided to ford at the spot where our first crossing was made. My plan was to attach the animals together. Fritz, mounted on his onagra, would direct the front of the procession, while I would keep the beasts in good order. I recommended to my son, at the first sign of the serpent's presence, to fly to Falcon's Nest. For my part, I proposed to post myself on a rock that overlooked the marsh, and in case of an attack on the part of

the serpent, retreat to the grotto, where a well-directed discharge of firearms would rid us of him.

I then loaded all our arms; my sons were placed in the dovecot, with orders to observe the movements of the enemy, while Fritz and I arranged our beasts. But a little misunderstanding put an end to all my plans. My wife, who had charge of the door, did not wait for the signal, and opened it before the animals were attached together. The ass, who had grown very lively, considering his age, by his three days' rest and good feed, no sooner saw a ray of light than he shot out of the door like an arrow, and was away in the open plain before we could stop him. It was a comical sight to see him kicking his heels in the air; and Fritz would have mounted his onagra, and ridden out after him, but I restrained him, and contented myself by trying every manner of persuasion to induce the poor animal to come back. We called him by his name; we made use of our cow horn; but all was useless—the unruly fellow exulted in his liberty, and, as if urged on by fate, he advanced direct to the marsh. But what horror froze our veins when, suddenly, we saw the horrid serpent emerging from the rushes! He elevated his head about ten feet from the ground, darted out his forked tongue, and crawled swiftly on toward the ass. The poor fellow soon saw his danger, and began to run, braying with all his might; but neither his cries nor his legs could save

him from his terrible enemy, and in a moment he was seized, enveloped, and crushed in the monstrous rings that the serpent threw around him.

My wife and sons uttered a cry of terror, and we fled in haste to the grotto, whence we could view the horrible combat between the boa and the ass. My children wanted to fire, and save the poor jackass; but I forbade them to do it.

"What can you do," said I, "with firearms? The boa is too much occupied with his prey to abandon it, and, besides, if you wound him, perhaps we may become the victims of his fury." The loss of our ass was great, it was true, but I hoped that it would save us from a greater.

The boa proceeded to his repast. The ass was dead; we had heard his last bray stifled by the pressure of the boa, and we could now distinctly hear the cracking of his bones. The monster, to give himself more power, had wound his tail about a piece of rock, which gave it the force of a lever. He commenced to swallow the prey he had secured. We observed that as he advanced the animal lost his strength; and when all had been swallowed he remained perfectly torpid and insensible.

I saw that the time had now arrived, and I exclaimed, "Now, my children, now the serpent is in our power!"

I then set out from the grotto, carrying my loaded gun in my hand; Fritz followed close by my

side; Jack came next, but the more timid Ernest lingered behind. On approaching the reptile, I found that my suppositions were right, and that it was the giant boa of the naturalists. The serpent raised its head, and darting on me a look of powerless anger, again let it fall.

Fritz and I fired together, and both our shots entered the skull of the animal; but they did not produce death, and the eyes of the serpent sparkled with rage. We advanced nearer, and, firing our pistols directly through the eye, we saw its rings contract, a slight quiver ran through its body, and it lay dead upon the sand before us, stretched out like the mast of a ship.

## CHAPTER XXIX

# THE DISCOVERY OF A CRYSTAL GROTTO

WE had nothing more to fear from the neighborhood of the boa; but I was afraid it might have either left its mate (it was a female) behind it, or else a nest of little ones, which in time would spread terror through the land. I resolved, in consequence, to undertake two expeditions—the one through the marsh, the other toward Falcon's Nest, through the passage in the rock, where I supposed the boa had got through.

We searched the marsh thoroughly. We easily recognized traces of the boa; the rushes were bent down where it had passed through, and there were deep spiral marks in the wet ground where it had rested its enormous rings. But we discovered nothing that induced us to believe that the boa had a companion; we found neither eggs nor little ones—nothing but a nest of dried rushes, and I did not think that the boa had constructed even that. Arrived at the end of the marsh, we made an interesting discovery; it was that of a new grotto, which opened out of the rock, and out of which flowed a little

stream that passed on among the rushes of the marsh.

The grotto was hung with stalactites, which rose in immense columns on each side, as if to sustain the vault, and formed themselves into singular and beautiful designs. We remained some time in admiration of this miracle of nature, and as we walked on, I remarked that the ground upon which we trod was composed of an extremely fine and white sort of earth, which, after examining it, I recognized as being "fuller's clay." I immediately gathered some handfuls, and carefully placed them in my pocket handkerchief.

"Here," said I to my sons, who were regarding me with astonishment, "here is a discovery that will be very welcome to your mother; and henceforth, if we bring her dirty clothes, we will bring her something to wash them with, for here is soap."

"I thought," said Ernest, "that soap was the result of human industry, and not a product of the earth."

"You thought right regarding the soap that is ordinarily used. But men have been so fortunate as to find a sort of earth in which are united certain qualities of soap; it is this we have found, and it is called 'fuller's clay,' because it is used to clean woolen goods."

We had approached the source of the spring while conversing; and Fritz, who was a little in ad-

vance, cried out that the rock had a large opening on one side. We ran forward, and soon found ourselves in a new cavern. We fired off a pistol, and we were able to judge by the echo that the grotto extended to a great distance. We then lighted two candles; they burned without trouble. Having left the others behind, Fritz and I continued to advance, when suddenly we saw our torches reflected from every side of the rock.

"Ah, papa!" cried Fritz, in a transport of joy, "see! see! a salt grotto! Look at the enormous blocks of salt lying at our feet."

"You are very much mistaken, indeed," I answered, "these masses are not salt; if they were, the water which drips from the rock would have melted them long ago; instead of salt it is crystal: we are really in a palace of rock crystal."

"Better yet—a palace of crystal! what an immense treasure for us!"

"Yes; such a treasure as the gold mine was to Robinson Crusoe."

After this trip, there remained all the country about the farmhouse yet unexplored. We set out, taking plenty of provisions, arms, vessels of all sorts, and torches to scare away all intruders on our night encampments.

We found everything in good order at the Nest; the harvest and the fruit trees gave promise of an abundant crop. The goats and sheep received us

joyfully, and came up of their own accord to receive some salt we threw them in passing. We did not stop, as the Lake farmhouse was the object of our expedition.

The farther we advanced, the fewer traces we found of the serpent. We could not see a single monkey in the cocoa wood; the crowing of our cocks, mingled with the bleating of our herds, gave promise of good order at the farmhouse; and we were not disappointed.

After dinner I announced that we would immediately commence our search, and we divided into three parties, each one charged to explore a part of the country. Ernest and his mother had, for their division, the guard of the provisions and the collection of all the ripe blades in the rice field; to defend them we left our brave dog Billy. Fritz and Jack, accompanied by Turk and the jackal, took the right bank of the lake, while I followed the left, with Francis, and his two young dogs.

It was the first time that the little fellow had shared in any of our expeditions, or had had a gun entrusted to him; he marched along with his head up, as proud as a new-made officer; and he burned with ardor to make trial of his new weapon. But the noise of our steps among the dried rushes frightened only some herons, and they flew so suddenly and quickly that it was impossible to shoot them. Francis began to grow despairing at his ill

success, when suddenly we found ourselves in presence of an innumerable quantity of wild geese and black swans, which covered the waters in all directions. Frank was just about to fire into the mass, when suddenly a sort of deep, prolonged cry, like a bellow, issued from the middle of the rushes. We stopped, astonished, and a second after the cry was repeated.

"I am sure." said Francis, "that it is the little onagra."

"Impossible," said I; "he would not leave his mother; and, besides, we must have heard him as he passed along. It is more likely to be a swamp bird, called a bittern."

I called the dogs to my side, and, setting them in the rushes, presently heard the report of Francis's gun. But, instead of firing in the air, he had discharged his gun right into the thickest part of the rushes, and I saw the birds that the dogs had disturbed flying away safe and sound.

"You awkward fellow," said I; "you have let your game escape you."

"On the contrary, papa, I have him! I have him!" repeated he. "Look!"

So saying, he pulled out of the rushes an animal resembling an agouti, and which the little hunter had already christened by that name.

I examined it with attention, and discovered that there was much difference between it and the agouti.

This one was about two feet in length, had incisor teeth like the rabbit, webbed feet, and long snout, but no tail at all.

"You have killed a rare and curious beast," said I to my little boy. "It is an inhabitant of South America, of the same family as the agouti and peccaries, but much rarer. It is a cabiai, and what is more, a cabiai of the largest size."

"And what sort of animal is this cabiai? I have never heard of him before."

"Oh, yes; you heard him bray just now. This animal profits by the darkness of night to provide his food: he runs fast, can swim well, and has the power of remaining a long time under water; he eats seated on his hind legs; and as to his cry, it sounds exactly like the braying of an ass."

But it was now time to return home, and Francis rejoiced at the prospect of his triumph over his brothers. He took up his cabiai, threw it over his shoulder, and although I saw that it was much too heavy for him, I thought I would let him have the merit of the whole affair.

We found, on returning, Master Ernest tranquilly seated on the bank of the river, and surrounded by a number of enormous muskrats which he had killed.

"We were occupied," said he, "my mother and I, in collecting the ripe rice blades, when I discovered, at a little distance, a sort of high, solid causeway,

which looked like a road constructed in the middle of the swamp. I immediately set off to discover what it was, and Master Knips with me. But we had scarcely advanced one step, when he darted from my side in pursuit of an animal that quickly disappeared in a sort of hole bored in the causeway. I remarked, on advancing, that the two sides of the bank were pierced all along with these holes, all of the same form and size. I was curious to know what they contained, and I introduced into the opening a long bamboo cane that I had in my hand. I had scarcely drawn it out when there issued forth a legion of animals similar to the first. Knips ran after them; but the rice grew so thick that he could not get along.

"An idea then occurred to me to place my rice sack over the hole. I did so; and beating the top of the causeway with a stick, a great number ran into the sack. I then began to beat the bag with my stick, so as to kill the prisoners. But imagine my surprise when I found myself assailed by a whole army of muskrats who emerged from every side, and began to run up my pantaloons. Knips made most desperate attempts. I could do nothing with my stick, and I cannot tell what might have happened if Billy had not heard my voice, and come to my assistance. He rushed bravely upon the army of rats, and made so terrible a slaughter that the enemy fled in terror. Those that you behold fell

victims to my stick and the formidable teeth of Billy; the rest of the army took refuge in their holes."

In the causeway with its inhabitants, I recognized a series of works similar to those of the beaver. The muskrats, like the beaver, had the same membrane at the feet to aid in swimming; both had the flat tail, and both were provided with two little bags of musk.

Fritz and Jack returned during these conversations; they brought back a ruffled moor hen and a nest of eggs: we placed them under one of our hens that happened to be sitting at the time.

Dinner was merry. We were all delighted to have found no traces of the boa.

The conversation naturally turned upon what we should do with our muskrat skins; and it was determined to make a carpet of them, to preserve the floor of our house dry. The next morning, at break of day, we renewed our search. We directed our course to the sugar-cane plantation, where we found no trace of the serpent. Just as we were leaving, there emerged from the canes a troop of pigs. I at first thought it was the young family of our old sow; but their number, the gray color of their skin, and the singular manner in which they walked, soon banished that idea. They trotted one after the other with a precision and regularity that would have done honor to a troop on parade. I took good aim, fired both barrels of my gun, and

two of the animals fell. The loss did not seem to make much impression on the rest of the troop, who trotted on as before. It was a singular spectacle to see the whole family marching along the borders of the sugar canes, with an unmovable calm; everyone followed exactly in his place, without any pushing; and, on examining them more closely, we found that there was but one footstep in the sand, so regularly did they march.

But Jack and Fritz, who were a little in advance, could not let them pass unheeded. Bang, bang, went their pistols, and two more animals hit the dust; the dogs also had their part in the victory, and each one strangled a victim.

I heard the reports of two other guns in the distance; those of Ernest and Francis, who had overtaken the pigs. Billy had also done his duty, and we thus had in possession nine pigs, each about three feet long. My boys were so proud of our chase that they determined on a triumphal march. They cut some green boughs and decorated our equipage; they adorned their caps and guns with flowers, and we made our entrance chanting a song of victory.

"You have kept me waiting long enough," said my wife, "your dinner is all spoiled; but, bless me! what a quantity of meat! Why should you kill more than we require?" But I assured her that we should be able to use it all.

I sent the two smaller boys to gather a quantity of green branches and leaves, with which to smoke our pork. Ernest skinned the pigs. Fritz and I cut them up, and my wife salted the pieces. I piled the hams all together, so that the salt would penetrate every part, and we also poured salted water over them and allowed them to remain until the hut for smoking was constructed.

During the three days while our meat was being smoked, we made an excursion to Prospect Hill; but we found everything there in the greatest disorder. The walls of the farmhouse were pulled down, and the cattle gone. The monkeys had passed that way, and left sure traces of their progress.

## CHAPTER XXX

# OSTRICHES AND BEARS

ON the morning of the fourth day we set off to commence our explorations beyond the defile that had been the barrier between the district we had inhabited for nearly three years, and an unknown land.

We began our march at daylight, and, after about two hours, we found a favorable spot for our encampment. It was situated on an elevated point that commanded a far extended prospect, and was defended on one side by a thick pine forest. We made an investigation of the forest round about; but we discovered nothing but two wild cats, who fled into the forest before we could level a gun at them.

The rest of the day was devoted to the fortification of our encampment. The heat was so powerful that we were obliged to postpone our excursion into the savanna, or prairie, until the morrow. But next morning I set out with my three eldest sons, Francis remaining with his mother to take care of the baggage.

We passed through the defile, at the extremity of which we had erected a palisade of bamboo and thorny palm; but it had all been torn down, and we could easily trace on the sand the spiral imprints

of the boa, clearly showing that he had come from the savanna through this passage.

We now ventured into a country that we had entered but once before. Jack recognized the place where we had taken the buffalo; the river which divided the plain was bordered by a rich line of vegetation. We followed its course for some time, and arrived at the grotto where my son had taken the young jackal. As we advanced, vegetation disappeared, and we soon found ourselves in the middle of an immense plain, bounded only by the horizon. The sun beat right down on our heads, the sand burned our feet. It was a desert without a single tree—a desert of sand, the only green things being a few withered geraniums and some sort of grass that contrasted strangely with the dryness of the soil. On crossing the river, we had filled our gourds with fresh water, but the sun had heated it so that we could not drink it, and we were obliged to throw it away.

After two hours of painful journeying, we arrived at the foot of a rock in the middle of the desert, affording us a refuge against the rays of the sun. We were too fatigued to climb the rock and view the country; we could scarcely stand, and our dogs were as tired as ourselves. We were alone in the middle of the desert, and could see the river in the distance, like a silver thread, winding through its green banks.

We had scarcely been seated five minutes when Master Knips, who had accompanied us, suddenly disappeared over the rock, having probably scented some brother monkeys in the neighborhood. Our dogs, also, deserted us; but we were too tired to call them back. I brought out some morsels of sugar cane and distributed them among the boys, for our thirst was terrible.

Suddenly Fritz, whose excellent sight was always making discoveries, cried out:

"There are two horsemen galloping up toward us. There, a third has joined them—doubtless they are Arabs of the desert."

"Arabs!" said Ernest, "Bedouins, you mean."

"Bedouins are but one division of the great family of Arabs, and your brother was right," said I, "but take my spyglass, Fritz; your news astonishes me."

"Oh, I see now a number of wagons loaded with hay; but they are so distant I can scarcely distinguish anything; something extraordinary is certainly going on."

"Let me have the glass," cried Jack, impatiently; and he declared he saw a crowd of cavaliers who carried little lances, with banners at the point.

"Come, give me the glass now," said I. "Your imaginations are too poetic to be relied upon."

I applied the glass to my eye and looked for some time attentively.

"Well," said I to Jack, "your Arabs, your cavaliers with lances, your hay carts, what do you think they have been transformed into?"

"Camels, perhaps, or giraffes."

"No, they are ostriches, and chance has thrown a splendid chase into our hands."

The ostriches were rapidly approaching. It seemed to me that the best way to capture them would be to wait until they came up, and then attack them by surprise. Fritz and Jack went and found the dogs, whilst Ernest and I sought some shelter to conceal us. We threw ourselves down behind some large tufts of a plant that grew among the rocks.

The ostriches were now within eyesight, and I could see that the family was composed of three females and a male, who was easily recognized by the long white feathers of his tail. We crouched closer to the ground, and held our dogs close to our sides.

At last the ostriches seemed aware of our presence, for they appeared to hesitate in their march; but, as we remained immovable, they at last seemed reassured, and were advancing directly to us, when our dogs, whom we could not keep quiet, suddenly sprang out upon them. Away went the timid birds with a rapidity that can be compared to nothing else but the wind driving before it a bundle of feathers. Their feet did not appear to touch the ground,

their half-extended wings had the appearance of sails, and the wind greatly increased their speed. I then ordered Fritz to unhood his eagle, which soon lit upon the head of the male ostrich, and, attacking his eyes, brought him to the ground. The dogs ran up, and when we arrived the gigantic bird was dead from the wounds that the ferocious animals had inflicted.

We were greatly disappointed at this issue of our chase; but, as the evil was without remedy, we contented ourselves with the white plumes from the unfortunate creature's tail, placing them proudly in our hats. The rich feathers contrasted strangely with our old worn-out beavers; but they were an excellent protection against the rays of the sun.

"What a pity," said Fritz, "to have put such a magnificent bird to death! How beautiful it would have looked stalking among our domestic animals!"

While we were talking, Jack and Ernest, who had wandered off, made some great discovery, and we saw them waving their plumed hats in the air, and shouting to us to hurry on.

"A nest!" they cried, "an ostrich's nest! Quick—quick!"

We hurried on, and found the two boys standing over a large ostrich nest—if we can dignify a hole dug in the ground by the name of nest—in which were neatly arranged from twenty-five to thirty eggs, each as large as a child's head.

My sons wanted to carry away the ostrich eggs; they would hatch them, they said, by exposing them in the daytime to the rays of the sun, and wrapping them up as warm as possible at night.

I observed to Fritz, who made the proposal, that each of these eggs weighed about three pounds, and the whole number about one hundred pounds, and that, having neither cart nor beast, it would be impossible to carry them across a desert, through which we could hardly drag our guns and knapsacks. But the children had got the idea into their heads, and and they agreed that each one should take one egg, which he should carry in his pocket handkerchief. The little boys soon repented of their agreement, and they changed their burden from hand to hand, with all the signs of fatigue. I advised them to cut some branches from a low sort of pine that grew about the rocks, and make a basket to carry their eggs.

We then arrived at the borders of a swamp that seemed to be formed by the meeting of several springs that flowed from the rocks. We could see in the distance troops of buffaloes, monkeys, and antelopes; nothing, however, indicated the presence of a boa. Filling our empty gourds with water, we left the swamp and followed a little stream of water that led us to the rock where we had reposed on our first excursion into the savanna. It was a delicious route in comparison with our painful journey of the morn-

ing. We found trees, grass—in short, it was a little oasis in the desert, and we named it "Green Valley."

We were yet distant about half an hour's journey from the jackal's grotto; Jack and Fritz had stopped a moment to adjust their burdens, and I also stopped with them, while Ernest marched forward, followed by Folb.

"The philosopher is in a hurry to get home," said Jack, laughing. "He runs that he may be rested first."

But scarcely had he finished his sentence, when we heard a cry of distress; it was the voice of Ernest, followed by two terrible howls, mingled with the barking of the dog. A moment after, Ernest reappeared; he was running at full speed, his face deadly pale, and he cried out in a voice stifled with fear:

"Bears! bears! They are following me," and the poor boy fell into my arms more dead than alive. I had not time to reassure him, and I felt myself seized with a sudden shiver, as an enormous bear appeared, immediately followed by a second.

"Courage, children," was all I could say. I seized my gun, and prepared to receive the enemy. Fritz did the same; and, with a courage and coolness far above his years, he took his place by my side. Jack also took his gun, but remained in the rear; while Ernest, who had no arms—for in his fright he had let his gun fall—took to his heels and ran away.

But our dogs were already at the attack. We fired together; and, although our shots did not bring down the enemy, they nevertheless told well: one of the bears had a jaw broken, the other a shoulder fractured. But the combat was not yet finished; they were only partially disabled. Our faithful servants fought most desperately, rolling in the dust with their enemies, while their blood poured in streams on the sand. We would have fired again, but we were afraid that we should kill the dogs, it being impossible, during the changing contest, to take any aim. We resolved to advance nearer, and, at about four paces from the bears, we discharged our pistols direct at their heads. The huge animals gave a groan that caused us to shudder, and then fell back motionless on the sand.

We dragged the two carcasses into the jackal's cave, and covered them with thorn bushes, to keep off all beasts and birds of prey; we also buried our ostrich eggs in the sand, as their weight delayed us greatly, and we could leave them here until the morrow.

The sun was set when we rejoined my wife and our little Francis. A good fire and a well-cooked supper refreshed our weary bodies, and my little heroes commenced a long narration of the exploits of the day, Master Jack making up for the small share he had had in our victory by boasting and swaggering enough for all.

Our dogs were already at the attack

My wife and Francis, during our absence, had discovered on the banks of a stream a sort of greasy, white earth, which appeared like fine pipe clay. I suspected that it was porcelain. I made two roughly shaped bowls from it, and threw them into a bed of hot cinders. The next morning I found my two bowls hardened by the heat; they were, as I supposed, porcelain, rather coarse-grained, but well enough for our purposes.

After breakfast the beasts were harnessed to the cart, and we returned to the cavern of the bears. Bringing the carcasses back to our camp, we devoted the day to the preparation of the bears' flesh. After having skinned the animals with the utmost care, I cut off the hams, divided the rest of the meat into long strips, about an inch in thickness, and exposed the whole to a good current of smoke. The grease was collected in bamboo canes, and carefully preserved; for, besides its use in the kitchen, my wife said it was excellent on bread in lieu of butter. We abandoned the carcasses to our dogs, and they, aided by the birds of prey, soon picked the bones so clean that there remained nothing but two perfectly white, dry skeletons, which we carried home with us for our museum. As for the skins, they were carefully washed with salt water, and rubbed with sand and ashes.

By this time my boys were tired and fretful, and I proposed to them to make an excursion alone in the

desert, a proposition which was joyfully received. Ernest refused to go, preferring to remain with us. On the other hand, Francis was so eager to accompany his brothers, that I at last permitted him to go.

My wife and I resumed our domestic labors, and Ernest, tranquilly seated on the sand, occupied himself in making cups from ostrich eggs. He had read somewhere of a plan to separate the eggs by surrounding them with a string steeped in strong vinegar. The action of the acid on the lime contained in the shell forms a circular line, which gradually eats through; but the lining membrane of the egg was so hard that it was necessary to cut it with a knife.

While examining a small cavern which we had discovered near the tent, I found several minerals; among others, a superb block of talc, as transparent as glass, which I resolved to fashion into window-panes. Ernest aided me as much as he was able, and we soon detached a splendid piece, about two feet in length, and the same in thickness. My wife, who received everything that could recall Europe to her mind with pleasure, was overjoyed at our new discovery, especially when I informed her that this mineral could be divided into leaves no thicker than paper.

As evening approached, we gathered around our hearth, where our good housewife was cooking two bear's paws, which had been well soaked in brine,

and the smell of which, as it escaped from the pot, promised us a delicious supper. The galloping of steeds was soon heard, and in another moment our huntsmen were at our sides.

Jack and Francis each carried a little kid on his back, with the feet tied together, and the game bag of Fritz appeared to me to be pretty full.

"A fine chase, papa!" cried Jack. "Storm carried me through the desert like a flash of lightning. Fritz has two Angora rabbits in his pouch, and also a cuckoo, who led us to one of the finest hives I have ever seen; we shall be able to get plenty of honey."

"Jack has not told all," said Fritz. "We have taken a whole troop of antelopes prisoners, and have driven them into our domains, where we can hunt them and tame them just when we please."

Turning toward Jack, whose face seemed very much swollen, I said, "What is the matter with your cheeks? Have your adventures been dangerous in any way?"

Fritz interrupted his answer, and began the following narration:

"After leaving you, we took the direction of the valley and, finding a narrow place where two or three trees had fallen down, we took advantage of this natural bridge, and crossed to the other side of the river. We rode on some time at full speed, the sun not being high enough to be unpleasant. At

last we discovered, in the distance, a herd of small animals, of what kind we could not distinguish, but I thought they were either antelopes or gazelles. Our first care was to call our dogs together, and keep them close by our sides, as we knew the animals were more afraid of them than of us. I then divided my forces: I gave Francis the line of the river as his position; Jack occupied the middle, while I, mounted on the onagra, kept the right wing, and endeavored to drive the animals to the center.

"The herd did not seem to perceive us until we were close to them, when suddenly they raised themselves from the grass where they had been lying, and, stretching out their long necks and little heads, surmounted by short, pointed ears, set off at full speed; and now our chase commenced. We soon forced the entire troop over the river, and drove them into the defile which separated us from the savanna. After we had secured them in our dominions, the next thing was to keep them there. We stretched a long cord from one side of the defile to the other, and fastened to it every light thing we could find, the continual motion of which frightened the animals away whenever they approached it; the ostrich plumes in our hats, our handkerchiefs, etc., furnished us with materials."

"Admirable!" said I, as the boy stopped, "admirable! The only thing is, in the night it cannot be seen; but it truly was a bright thought for such

a boy. But about the rabbits," added I, "what do you intend to do with them? If they should happen to get in your mother's vegetable garden, there would not be much of it left."

"No, no; but I thought that one of our two islands would make a good home for them. For instance, Shark Island would make a magnificent warren, and furnish us many a good dish, and fine furs to make caps out of."

"But how did you come to take them alive?"

"The honor of the capture is due to my eagle; he pounced down upon a troop of rabbits that were flying before us, and carried off two in his talons. I rescued them before he had injured them, and he consoled himself by killing another, which he soon devoured."

I could see that Jack was watching every opportunity to put in a word, and I laughingly requested the poor fellow to speak.

"In my turn!" said he, "in my turn! I galloped on with Francis while Fritz was chasing the rabbits; the dogs followed us, and suddenly we saw them jump forward, and run after two little animals about the size of a hare. Away we all went, and, after a hot chase of a quarter of an hour, we captured the two fugitives. There they are," and Jack threw down before us two beautiful little animals. "I think they are young fawns."

"And I think," said I, "that they are antelopes."

"Well, whatever they may be," continued Jack, "our dogs behaved admirably, and so, I can say, did their masters. But that was nothing to what happened afterwards. We had scarcely commenced our progress when a sort of cuckoo began to fly before us, singing away as if to defy us. We rode on after him, when suddenly he stopped just over a bees' nest, concealed in the ground. We now held a council of war about the nest. Francis begged to be excused, recalling to our memories the former attack at Falcon's Nest. Fritz was willing to give advice, but would rather leave the work to somebody else; so you see, at last, the whole affair came upon me. Armed with some sulphur matches that I found in my knapsack, I advanced and tried to suffocate the bees by throwing the lighted matches down the hole, when suddenly a rumbling noise was heard, and, in a second, a swarm of bees emerged, attacking me on all sides. It was with the greatest difficulty that I mounted my buffalo and rode away. I could scarcely believe," said Jack, as he finished, "that so small an animal could cause so much pain."

I easily recognized the strange bird as being the "cuckoo-indicator" of naturalists. "But," thought I, "how, if this coast is uninhabited, could the bird have known that human beings liked honey? Is not such conduct a sign that we are not the first men who have trod this soil? May not the interior of the country be inhabited?" I was convinced that

it would not be prudent to advance into the interior, unless with the greatest caution. I also resolved to build a fortress on one side of the coast, and I chose Shark Island as its situation. A strong fortification that would command the coast of Felsenheim would enable us to defend ourselves against all attack from the interior, if any ever took place.

## CHAPTER XXXI

# A HUNT AND A CAPTURE

AT the break of day I was up, and awoke my sons. Our labors were almost done—our bears' meat was smoked, our fat all run out into bamboo vessels; and the rainy season, which was rapidly approaching, warned us to return to our home in the grotto. Nevertheless, I wished to make another excursion into the desert, to pay a second visit to the nest of ostrich eggs.

We took with us Turk and Billy, and set off on horseback, following the direction of the Green Valley. To the rock from which Fritz discovered the ostriches, we gave the name of "Arab's Tower," in allusion to the mistake he had made in thinking the ostriches to be Arabs of the desert.

Jack and Francis galloped off at full speed, and, as the plain was so level that they could not escape from my eye, I let them go on. Fritz and I directed our course to the ostrich nest.

We had scarcely come in sight of it when we saw four noble ostriches rise from the sand and advance toward us. Fritz prepared his eagle for the conflict; but he fastened its beak so strongly that it was almost harmless. Our dogs were also muz-

zled, and we stood still, in order that we might not frighten the birds. They seemed to think us lifeless objects, for they came on directly until they had arrived within pistol shot; they were three females and a male—the last a little in advance, with his beautiful tail feathers floating behind him. The moment of attack was come; I seized my string with balls, and, calling up all my sleight of hand, I launched it against the male ostrich. Unfortunately, however, instead of catching him around the legs, as I intended, the balls of my string took a turn round his body, and I only fastened his wings to his sides. It diminished his speed somewhat, but the frightened bird turned round, and, using his long legs, endeavored to escape. Away we dashed after him, I on the onagra, and Fritz on the colt. But we were nearly exhausted, when, happily, Jack and Francis rode up, and cut off his further retreat.

Fritz then unhooded his eagle, and now commenced an arduous chase. Jack and Francis on one side, and Fritz and I on the other, tormented the ostrich and harassed him without ceasing; but the most useful combatant was the eagle. The presence of this new enemy troubled the ostrich greatly; he felt him on his head, and heard the flapping of his wings, while, on the other hand, the eagle, furious at finding his beak strongly fastened, was so violent that, by a vigorous stroke of his wings, the ostrich fairly tottered. Jack then threw his string and balls so

skilfully that the noble bird bit the sand of the desert.

A cry of joy burst from the huntsmen, the eagle was recalled and hoodwinked, and we hastened to our prize in order to prevent his breaking the bonds that confined him; for he was so very violent, and struggled so vigorously, that I hardly dared to approach him. I imagined that by depriving him of light I might reduce his fury, and I threw my hunting sack, my vest, and handkerchief over his head. I had discovered the secret; no sooner were his eyes covered than he became as quiet as a lamb. I approached and passed a large band of sea-dog skin around his body; two other bands were attached as reins to each side, and his legs were fastened with strong cords, long enough to allow him to walk.

I then attached our two coursers before and behind the ostrich with strong cords; my two cavaliers jumped into their saddles, and I pulled the covering from the head of the ostrich.

The bird remained some time immovable, as if astonished at the return of light. It soon made a start; but the ropes pulled it roughly back, and it fell down on its knees; again it made the attempt, and again it was foiled. It tried to fly, but its wings were tightly fastened by the band I had passed around them: its legs were also restrained: it threw itself from side to side with the utmost violence, but the patient buffaloes did not pay the least attention

to the pulling and hauling. At last the bird appeared convinced of the uselessness of its efforts, and, submitting to its two companions, set off with them at full gallop. They dashed gallantly on for half an hour, until the buffalo and the bull, less accustomed to the sands of the savanna than the ostrich, forced it to move more slowly.

Meantime, Fritz and I set out in search of the ostrich nest. The cross of willows which we had planted in the ground near it, at our last visit, still remained, and, as we approached, a female bird rose up off the nest and fled rapidly away into the desert. Her presence assured us that the eggs still retained the principle of life. I had taken care to bring with me a sack and a quantity of cotton. I now took out six of the eggs, and, wrapping them as carefully as possible in the cotton, placed them in the sack, leaving the others in the nest, in hopes the mother would not discover the theft.

When we arrived at our tent, I fastened the ostrich securely between two trees, and, next day, when we started on our journey home, he took his place between the bull and the buffalo, as before. At first he threw himself from right to left, but all in vain; his two conductors were like immovable masses.

Fritz mounted the young colt Rapid, and I the onagra, while Ernest directed the cart in the middle of which my wife sat in all her majesty, among the

provisions. Our march was slow, but it was very picturesque, as may be imagined.

We halted at the entrance of the defile where my sons had suspended the cord with the feathers attached, to keep back the antelopes and gazelles. In the place of the cord, we erected a solid palisade of bamboo, high enough to keep out all animals that do not climb. We planted a row of thorn bushes on each side, and sprinkled a layer of sand all around, so that we could discover what sort of animals might frequent it.

It was night when we arrived at the cabin of the Hermitage, where we slept, and the next afternoon reached our dear Felsenheim.

## CHAPTER XXXII

# PROGRESS IN OSTRICH DISCIPLINE—THE NEW HAT

THE day after our arrival at Felsenheim, my wife commenced "cleaning house." Windows were opened, beds aired, and all swept and garnished. While she and the two younger boys were thus employed, I, with the two elder, unpacked the riches we had brought home.

We had tied the ostrich, at first, under a tree, and securely fastened his feet; but we changed his situation, and tied him to one of the strong bamboo columns that supported the gallery.

We next submitted the eggs to the trial of warm water. Several of them fell heavily to the bottom; but three or four moved slightly when put in the water, and these were carefully preserved, in order that we might try the experiment of hatching them by cotton and artificial heat. For this purpose I constructed an oven, in which I took care to maintain that degree of heat which the thermometer marked as being the natural heat of the hen.

We then installed our Angora rabbits on Shark Island; we constructed a burrow in the ground,

similar to those of Europe, and, before putting them in, we combed them, and removed all the loose hair. We also fixed wooden combs over the entrance of each burrow, so that the rabbits, when passing in or out, would be deprived of some part of their fine wool, which I intended to manufacture into hats.

The two antelopes were also transported to Shark Island. We should have liked very much to keep these charming little creatures about us, but the fear of the dogs and beasts of prey forced us to condemn the timid creatures to exile. I erected a hut in the middle of the island, to shelter them, and we took good care to provide them with plenty of provisions.

The education of the ostrich was an enterprise as difficult as it was novel. Our pupil began by putting himself in a terrible passion; he struggled, snapped at us with his beak, and cut up all sorts of capers; but we could find no better remedy for such conduct than to treat him as we had treated Fritz's eagle, that was, by burning tobacco under his nose. This had the desired effect, and we soon saw the majestic bird totter and fall insensible to the ground. We used this plan several times. Little by little we relaxed the cord which fastened the ostrich to the bamboo post, and gave him room to wander about the doorway. A litter of rushes was provided for him; calabashes filled with sweet nuts, rice, maize, and guavas were placed every day before

the animal; in a word, we neglected nothing that we thought would consort with the fellow's taste.

During three days all our cares were in vain; our choice dishes were regarded with great disdain, the beautiful captive would not eat, and it carried its obstinacy so far that at last I was seriously afraid of the consequences. At last the idea occurred to my wife of poking down the throat of the bird, willy-nilly, balls of maize and butter. The ostrich made horrible faces at first, but when it got a taste of the balls, all trouble on that point was over, and the delicacies we placed before it were quickly devoured, the guavas being especially favored.

The natural savageness of the bird disappeared more and more every day; it would let us approach it without striking at us, and after some days we thought we could, without much risk, unfasten it, to take a short lesson in the art of walking. We placed it between the buffalo and the bull, and put it through all the exercises of the stable—to trot, to gallop, stop short, trot again, walk slow, etc. I cannot say that the poor bird relished his first lesson very much, but by the end of the month his education had so well succeeded that I now seriously thought of making him useful.

The first thing that was to be thought of was a bit; but how could I contrive a bit for a beak? The absence of light had a very direct influence upon the ostrich; it would stop short when blindfolded, and

could not be induced to move until its eyes were uncovered. So I made, with the skin of a sea dog, a sort of hood, like the one we had made for the eagle, which covered the head, being fastened about the neck. I made two openings in the side of this hood, one opposite each eye, and covered each of these holes with one of our little turtle shells, attached to a whalebone spring, fixed in such a manner that it would open and shut. Reins were fastened to these springs, so that, by their action, we could admit the light or shut it out, just as we pleased. When the two shells were open, the ostrich galloped straight on; when one was opened, it went in a direction corresponding with the eye that received light, and when both shells were shut, it would stop short. The most fully trained horse could not have obeyed better than our ostrich did under his novel headdress.

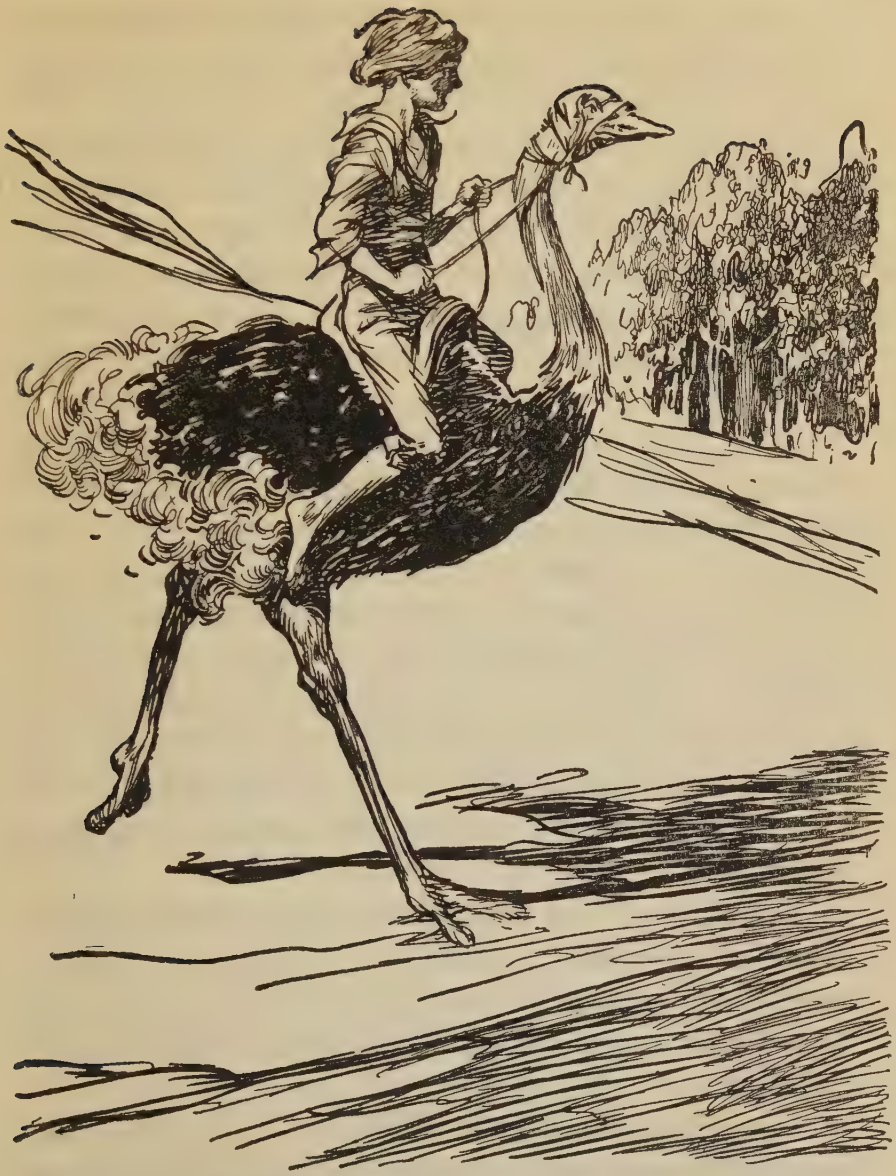
My children thought that the education of our captive was now complete; but I was of a different opinion. The ostrich is a very robust animal, and capable of supporting a great deal of fatigue. I wished it to learn to carry burdens, to draw a carriage, and be adapted for horsemanship; I began, consequently, to make harness for each of these occupations. We had a great deal of difficulty in making the ostrich submit to our wishes; our hardest task was to make it submit to our mounting it; but I was not discouraged, and at last we

had the satisfaction of seeing our new courser galloping between Felsenheim and Falcon's Nest with one of our young cavaliers mounted on his back.

The artificial nest of ostrich eggs, which we had enveloped in cotton, and placed in a stove, had succeeded; that is to say, out of six eggs, three had hatched. The young ostriches were the drollest-looking animals that could be imagined. They looked like ducks mounted on long legs, and they tottered awkwardly about on their slender stilts. One died the day after its birth; the two others survived, and we endeavored to preserve them by taking all possible care for their comfort. Maize, acorns, boiled rice, milk, and cassava were set before them in rich profusion.

I wished, before the rains came on, to prepare a field to receive the seeds we had hitherto sown without any order or regularity. The sun was so intense that we could work but four hours in the day: two in the morning and two in the evening. We were able, however, to prepare at last about two acres of land, which would furnish us an ample harvest of maize, potatoes, and manioc root.

We had had nothing to drink but water since our arrival on the island, except the barrel of Cape wine that we had saved from the shipwreck; but that had long ago been exhausted, and I now determined to make some sort of drink for the winter.



We had the satisfaction of seeing our new courser galloping away with one of our cavaliers on his back

I had often heard of the hydromel of the Russians; we had the primary material, honey, from our hives, and I determined to make the experiment. We boiled some honey in a sufficient quantity of water, and, after having filled two barrels with the fluid, I threw in a large cake of sour corn bread, to make the liquor ferment; when that process was finished, we tasted it, and found it was of a pleasant flavor, agreeably acid, and a great resource for our long winter days.

When all our provisions were gathered in, we commenced our manufacture of hats. The first question was the form of our hats; each one gave in his opinion, but necessity came into the council, and obliged us to choose the form that our means permitted. I cut a wooden head, on which we spread a thick layer of soft paste, composed of muskrat skin and the glue of fishes. We let it dry, and as it took the exact impress of the mold, we obtained a sort of cap, of which my readers can form some idea of the shape.

It had cost us a great deal of trouble to produce even this ill-looking affair. My sons were scarcely less satisfied with it than I was; but our European hats were so dilapidated that it was a necessity to replace them.

Long ago Ernest had discovered on a tree near Falcon's Stream some cochineal insects, which I knew gave the finest dyestuff in the world. By using the

cochineal, I soon gave to our beaver a beautiful brilliant purple tint. The hat looked better; I adorned it with a couple of ostrich plumes, and it looked better still; my wife passed a ribbon round it, which she had found in her enchanted sack, and the disdain with which my poor beaver had been received was changed into anxious requests for its possession.

But its destination had been fixed beforehand: it belonged to Francis by right, as he had lost his old hat a few days before.

We were also much in want of kitchen utensils, and I was obliged to pass from the art of hat making to that of potter.

I did not understand much about pottery; but I constructed in one corner of the grotto a large stove, divided into compartments, destined to receive the different articles; earthen pipes were conducted all around, so as to equalize the heat as much as possible. I had no idea how the thing should be done, and I can safely say I invented rather than imitated a furnace for pottery.

I next took a certain quantity of the porcelain earth, and carefully removed all foreign particles, such as bits of stone, as I was afraid they would cut our hands. I mixed this with water, and also with a quantity of the talc we had brought home for windowpanes, thinking, perhaps, it would render the mixture more firm and solid. When all was well

worked up together, I left it a little while to dry, while I made a potter's wheel for turning our utensils on. For this I used the wheel of one of our cannon carriages, fixed horizontally on a pivot. I turned out some plates and dishes, cups and saucers, bowls, and other things. I exposed these articles to a very strong heat: a great many broke in pieces, but I completed about half. When baked, they were perfectly transparent and of the most beautiful grain. My wife saw her kitchen apparatus enriched with utensils of all sorts, and, overwhelmed with joy, she promised us, in exchange, numberless dainties, which, for want of a suitable utensil, she had hitherto been unable to make.

## CHAPTER XXXIII

# THE RETURN OF THE RAINY SEASON—THE CAJACK

THE rainy season began, and the winds and the rain commenced; the sky that had so long been clear became dark with storm clouds; terrible tempests announced the approach of winter; and we closed the door of our grotto, happy in having such a comfortable shelter.

The turning wheel was continually in motion. We made utensils that at the outset we had despaired of ever possessing. Ernest found occupation enough in his books; but his brothers never read unless driven by necessity. I felt the urgency of providing some active occupation for them, and one more to their taste than literature; but I could not think of anything, when Fritz came to my assistance.

"We have," said he, "in our ostrich, a splendid post horse, with which to travel the highways of our kingdom; we have carts to transport our provisions; a pinnace, and a canoe, which are riding majestically at anchor in Safety Bay; but one thing is yet wanting. We have need of an equipage that will glide over the surface of the water, as the ostrich does over the sand. I have read that the Greenlanders have a

sort of vessel which they call a 'cajack.' Why cannot we construct one? We have built a canoe—why should we, civilized Europeans, not succeed in that which barbarous savages have attempted?"

I joyfully received the proposition of my son. The cajack, the only vessel of the Greenlander, is a sort of canoe in the form of a shell; and a piece of walrus skin, with three or four strips of whalebone, are almost the only requisites for its construction. It is extremely light, and the navigator who has glided in it over the surface of the wave can easily carry it on his shoulder when he has arrived at land.

The strips of whalebone, bamboo cane, and Spanish rushes, with some sea-dog skin, were the materials that we employed in making our cajack. Two arched strips of whalebone fastened at each end, and separated in the middle by a piece of bamboo fixed transversely across, formed the two sides; other pieces of whalebone, woven in with rushes and moss, well covered with pitch, formed the skeleton. The inside was covered with a coat of gum and moss, and the outside with the skins of two sea calves, covered with a gum elastic coat. I cut out oars of bamboo, and constructed, in the bow, a place to receive a sail.

The winter glided away; reading, the study of languages, and other literary pursuits mingled with our domestic duties helped to render the gloomy days we passed in the grotto more pleasant and

agreeable. But at last the wind calmed, the sea resumed its wonted placidity, the grass sprang up under our feet, and we revisited Falcon's Nest, with its giant trees and its rich harvest of springing grain.

We set off to explore Shark Island, to see what had become of the colony we had planted there. Our first visit was to the antelopes. They fled at our approach; but we saw with pleasure that they had devoured all the provisions we had provided them with. We strewed some rushes in their little hut, for a litter; and after renewing the stock of provisions, left the spot, so that the timid animals could return. My sons and I wandered over the island, gathering pieces of coral and beautiful shells to adorn our museum.

A second excursion to Shark Island gave us leisure to examine the different plantations we had made: they had succeeded admirably, and we found several young trees already some feet above the ground. Our rabbits had also prospered, and the family had increased to an enormous extent.

We made, too, a short excursion to Whale Island; our plantations here had also succeeded—all was prosperity around us. Abundance, richness, and a luxuriant vegetation gave promise of an excellent harvest.

One day, when I was occupied in the grotto, three of my sons disappeared without saying any-

thing; they carried with them their arms, provisions, and a number of traps. The latter easily explained the secret of their expedition; they had gone for muskrat skins in order to make some new hats. I wished them good luck, and thought nothing more of the matter.

Ernest, always fond of home, had remained reading in the library; my wife was occupied in the kitchen; and I resolved to imitate my sons, and attempt an excursion alone. I had need of some large blocks of wood with which to grind the grain we had gathered. I went to the stable for a horse; but all except the buffalo had disappeared, and I was obliged to be content with him. I fastened him to the sledge, and we set off in the direction of the Jackal's River. I took with me Folb and Braun.

My intention in choosing the river road was that in passing I might take a look at our plantations of manioc and potatoes which extended along its bank. I had not seen this land, which we had prepared with a great deal of trouble, for four months, and I expected to find an abundant harvest preparing for us. Judge, then, of my surprise, on approaching, to find the whole plantation a scene of ruin: the roots that had just begun to sprout were all trodden under foot, or scattered over the ground—in a word, it was a scene of utter desolation. The prints in the moist earth soon revealed the authors of this ruin. It had been done either by the wild pigs, or else by

the family of our old sow. I returned to Felsenheim with a saddened heart.

Toward evening we began to grow anxious about the return of the boys, when suddenly Jack appeared in the distance. He arrived at full gallop on his ostrich, having left his brothers far behind. He brought nothing with him, pretending that his courser would receive no other burden than himself. Fritz and Francis coming up, we discovered that each of them carried before him a sack full of game, the products of the chase in which they had been extremely fortunate.

During supper, each one recounted his adventures.

"For my part," said Fritz, when his brothers were done boasting, "I have brought home nothing but a plant; but it is of value. Examine these thistles, I beg of you; see their hard, sharp points. Will they not be excellent to card the hair in manufacturing our hats?"

Each one of our young adventurers had a thousand different stories to relate. I had no time to listen to their boastings, and I turned to examine the products of the expedition. The thistles of Fritz, which I recognized as being the "carding thistle," were received by me as a precious discovery—one more instrument added to our resources. My sons had also brought home some cuttings of sweet potatoes and cinnamon. Their good mother received

them with joy; and the next morning they were carefully planted in the kitchen garden.

The grain that we had sown before the rainy season, I perceived, had now come to maturity, although it was not more than five months since we had confided it to the earth. Wishing to harvest it in the shortest possible time, and with the least strength, I resolved to adopt the Italian method rather than the Swiss.

I commenced by leveling a large space before the grotto, to serve as a threshing floor. We then, after having well watered it, beat the earth for a long time with clubs. When the sun had dried it up, the operation was repeated, and we continued it until we obtained a solid, flat surface, without a crack in it.

On arriving at the field we were about to reap, my wife asked me where I would find anything with which to tie up the blades into sheaves.

"We will need nothing of the sort," said I; "everything is to be done according to the Italian method. Those people, naturally averse to labor, never use sheaves, as being too heavy to carry."

"How, then," asked Fritz, "do they manage to carry their harvest home?"

"You will soon see," said I.

At the same time I gathered up in my left hand all the stalks that it could contain, and taking a long knife in my right hand, I cut off the stalks

about six inches below the head. I then threw the handful into a basket. "There," said I, laughing, to Fritz, "there is the first act of an Italian harvest."

My children thought it was an admirable plan; and in a short time the plain presented but an unequal surface, bristling with broken stalks, here and there dotted with a forgotten blade.

We now hastened to the grotto, taking with us the grain we had cut. When we arrived there, Ernest and his mother received orders to sprinkle the blades over the threshing floor I had prepared, while my three cavaliers stood by their coursers' sides, laughing at our new invention for threshing grain.

When everything was prepared, "To the saddle!" cried I, "to the saddle!" and I told them they had nothing to do but display their horsemanship among the grain. I leave the screams, the shouts of laughter to the imagination of readers; the bull, the onagra, and the ostrich rivaled each other in swiftness; my wife, Ernest, and I, each one armed with a pitchfork, followed after them, throwing the grain under the feet of the animals.

When the grain was all threshed, we set to work to clear it of the straws and dirt that had become mixed with it. This was the most difficult and the most painful part of all the labor. We laid the grain on close hurdles, and with wooden flails we endeavored to beat out the dirt; but this was not

to be effected except at the expense of our eyes, mouth, or nose.

After several days engaged in these works, we found ourselves rich enough to defy all attacks of famine; we had sixty bushels of barley, eighty of wheat, and more than a hundred of maize.

## CHAPTER XXXIV

# AN ADVENTURE WITH SEA COWS —THE DRAWBRIDGE

THE trial of the cajack was a grand holiday fête; all were anxious to join in it. Fritz was formally invited to take his place in his boat of skin, which was furnished with two little wheels of copper, so that it could be used as well on land as on sea. Fritz was installed upon his bench, as proud as Neptune or any other marine god setting off on a distant voyage. The form of the cajack was not a bad resemblance of those immense shells that fable has assigned to the sea gods. I untied the canoe and held myself ready to start at a moment's notice, if any real danger should threaten our Greenland sailor.

When all these precautions were taken—"To the sea!" cried I to Fritz; "to the sea!" "Good-by!" repeated his brothers; and the cajack glided into the water.

The surface of the bay was calm and tranquil, and soon the Greenlander was dancing gaily over the waves. Sometimes he would shoot off far out of our sight; then suddenly he would disappear in a cloud of foam, to the great terror of his mother; in

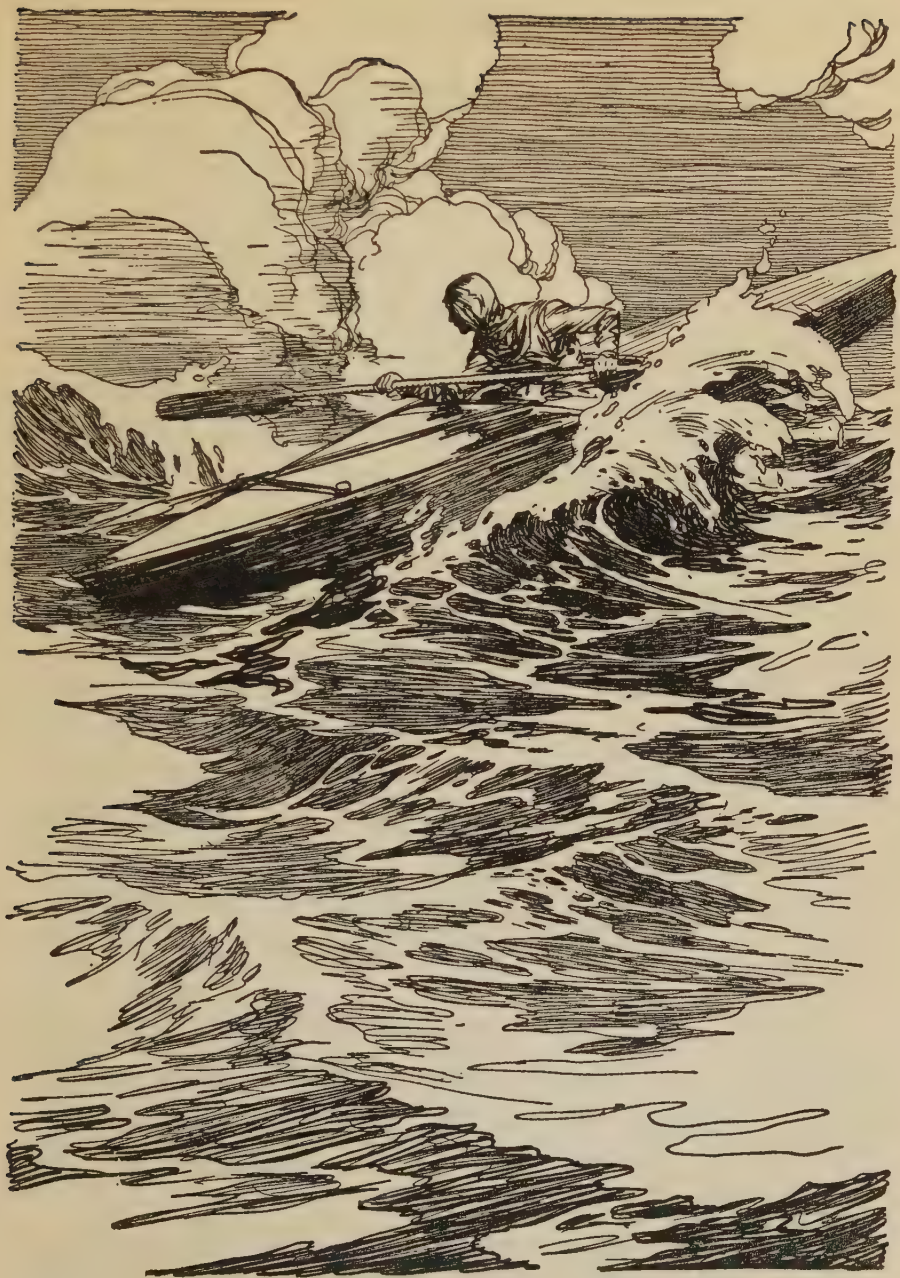
another moment we saw his head above the floods, and an oar that he had elevated.

Not content with the surface of the bay, he turned his frail bark toward the Jackal's River, and attempted to mount the current; but this proved too strong for him, and threw him back so violently that he disappeared from our sight. We jumped into the canoe to fly to the assistance of the poor Greenlander. The wheel of the canoe appeared to us too slow; and while I exerted all my force in turning it, my two sons took each an oar. We scarcely touched the surface of the water, yet we could not perceive anything; our cries had no echo but the rocks, and our sight was lost in the foaming waves that boiled up around us. I had not the courage to express my uneasiness to my sons; when suddenly, in the direction of a rock just visible through the foam, I saw a light cloud of smoke issuing forth, which was followed by a report.

"He is saved!" cried I, "he is saved! Fritz is there in the direction of the smoke."

I then fired my pistol, which was instantly answered by another report in the same direction. After a hard row, we perceived Fritz, and in a quarter of an hour we reached him.

We found the young hero of the sea established on the rocks. Before him lay a walrus, or sea cow, which he had killed with his harpoon. I commenced by reproving my son for his imprudence.



The current swept Fritz away in spite of himself

"My dear father," answered he, "the current swept me away in spite of myself. My oars were like straws before the force of the Jackal's River; and I found myself thrown back into the sea, at such a distance as to lose sight of land altogether. But I had no time to fear; a company of sea cows passed along, almost under my nose. To throw my harpoon and strike one of these animals was the work of an instant. He dived down; but traces of blood were left behind. The second time I launched a harpoon direct in his side. After some struggles, the monster extended himself on this rock. I fired two pistols at the head of the animal, and probably those were the reports you heard."

"God knows, my poor child," I cried, "what would have become of you if your frail boat of leather had been torn by the terrible teeth of the walrus. But, God be praised, you are safe, and that is better than the capture of ten such animals, which are not very precious game. I do not know what use this will be to us, notwithstanding it is near ten feet long."

"Well, then, if it is good for nothing," answered Fritz, "I will keep the head myself. I will prepare it and fasten it to the bow of my cajack: its long, white teeth will have a fine effect, and I will call my cajack 'The Walrus.'"

"The teeth of the walrus," said I, "are the only things worth preserving. They are as white and

hard as ivory. But make haste, for the sky gives sure token of a storm."

I wished to take Fritz and his cajack into our canoe, but he refused, and dashed on, saying he would announce our return to his mother. I let him proceed, and he soon passed us.

The storm came on more quickly than I had anticipated. We had scarcely accomplished a third of our course when the thick black clouds that brooded over the horizon burst forth in torrents of rain with wind and lightning. Fritz was too far from us to allow of his joining us, and I repented of not having taken him into the boat with us. I desired Jack and Ernest to lash themselves fast to the ropes of the canoe, so that they would not be carried away by the waves that occasionally broke over us.

The tempest increased, and my anxiety increased with it; the waves were like mountains. At one moment we would be high in air, and at another at the bottom of an abyss, where it would seem we were lost forever. But the violence of the tempest prevented its lasting a great while. The waves subsided, and after a hurricane of a quarter of an hour, the wind fell, and the storm for a time was over, although black and angry clouds rolled over our heads.

We redoubled our efforts at the oars and the wheel, and soon arrived within sight of Safety Bay. We entered the well-known harbor, and the first

objects which greeted our sight were Fritz, Francis, and their mother, kneeling on the beach, praying for our preservation. The heart of my poor Elizabeth was almost broken with anxiety.

"At last," said Fritz, "we are again united. I had given up all hopes of ever seeing you again, when a huge wave swept over my little barque; but I held my breath, and the wave passed on, and I found myself still alive. But it was not my exertions that brought me to the shore: there was a stronger hand than mine that sustained my cajack among the waves—the hand of God," added the young man.

The rain had been so abundant that the Jackal's River had overflowed its banks and damaged some of our buildings. We therefore employed ourselves in building protections against any other storms that might visit the coast of Felsenheim.

One clear moonlight night I was suddenly awakened by barks and cries, as if all the jackals of the country, the bears and tigers of the savanna, had made an invasion into our domain. I rose in a great fright, and arming myself with a gun, I walked to the door of the grotto, which we generally left open on account of the fresh air. Fritz had also heard the noise, and I found him half dressed, ready to face the danger.

"What do you think it is, papa?" said he, "a new invasion of jackals?"

I hid my fear, and assured my son that doubtless it was our pigs. I did not think my supposition would be true. We ran out, and found that our dogs and the jackal had captured three large hogs. Our first movement was to laugh; we tried to call off our dogs, but in vain; they had the poor pigs by the ears, and we were forced to open their mouths with our hands. The pigs never waited to see who were their liberators, but scampered away and were soon across the river.

I thought this invasion due to negligence on our part, because we had forgotten to take up the planks from Family Bridge; but, upon examination, I found that they had been all removed, and that the bold pigs had come across on the beams of the bridge.

This occurrence convinced me that Family Bridge was not a barrier, but only a means of entering our domains. I had long meant to erect a drawbridge, and now appeared the proper time. I constructed, between two high stakes, a sweep that could be easily moved, and by the means of two ropes, a lever, and a counterpoise, we had a bridge which could be easily raised and lowered. My young people exerted themselves in a thousand gymnastic exercises about the stakes of the drawbridge; it was lowered, and raised, and for a few days was a great source of amusement for them.

## CHAPTER XXXV

# A COMBAT WITH A HYENA—A FLYING COURIER

NOT long after this, my sons planned an excursion alone into the savanna, and asked my permission. My harebrained youngsters promised themselves so much pleasure that I had not the heart to deny them.

"I will make some pemmican," said Fritz, "we have bear's meat enough left for it."

"And I," said Jack, with a mysterious air, "I will take two pigeons with me. I have got an idea in my head."

"And I," added little Francis, "will take care of the coursers; and if Fritz will take my advice, he will take the cajack along—it will sail so nicely on the lake; and perhaps we can capture some of the black swans. Oh, how beautiful a pair of those swans would look in the basin of Falcon's Nest!"

Our old sledge was brought down, mounted on cannon wheels, and loaded with all that the young adventurers intended to carry with them. The cajack, arms, provisions—nothing was forgotten; anything that came into their heads they piled on,

and a caravan in the desert could not have made more preparation.

When the morning of departure arrived, Jack climbed up into the dovecot, and took out several pairs of pigeons.

"How is this?" said I, as I saw the youngster placing his pigeons in a basket. "I am afraid that those old pigeons will be pretty tough eating."

He looked at me knowingly for a moment, but did not answer. When they were about to set off, I saw him conversing mysteriously with Ernest; but I could discover nothing, and I contented myself with waiting a surprise of some kind.

At last they were ready to set out. My wife enjoined my sons to be prudent; we embraced them, and they soon disappeared in a cloud of dust, with the coursers and the sledge. Ernest alone remained with his mother and me.

The boys, as I learned on their return, passed over the tract of land that separated Family Bridge from the Hermitage, where they intended to pass the day, when, on approaching the farmhouse, they heard cries like that of a person in distress. It was a sort of wild, maniacal laugh; and the animals stopped in terror; the dogs barked and howled fearfully; and the ostrich, more frightened than the others, fled in the direction of the Lake of Swans with such rapidity that its master could not check it. The bull and the onagra trembled so violently

that Fritz and his brother were obliged to dismount.

Francis seized his gun, put two pistols in his belt, called Folb and Braun, and calmly walked on in the direction of the strange laugh. He had not gone more than thirty paces when he perceived, through the bushes, an enormous hyena, who, after having killed one of our sheep, was devouring it; while ever and anon that strange laugh of joy would echo from its blood-stained lips. The presence of the little hunter did not disturb the monster in his horrid repast. But Francis wanted neither courage nor presence of mind; he placed himself behind a tree, and taking good aim, he discharged both barrels of his gun, and was so fortunate as to break both the forelegs and pierce the breast of the hyena. The dogs then rushed on; their terror changed into rage. The most terrible combat now ensued; growls and cries resounded through the air, and blood flowed freely.

Fritz, who had succeeded in attaching the onagra and the bull to a tree, now ran up at the sound of the gun and the noise of the dogs. They would have fired again, but the dogs were so close to the hyena that they were afraid of hitting them, so that they were obliged to await the issue of the combat. Folb took the hyena by the throat, and Braun by the muzzle, and there they held him until he dropped down dead.

The following day we were calmly conversing under the vault of the grotto, when a bird fluttered in at the open door of the dovecot.

"Shut it, shut it!" cried Ernest; "tomorrow morning we will inspect our new guest. Who knows! perhaps it is a courier from New Holland, and bears despatches under its wing from Sydney, Port Jackson, and so forth. I have been reading today of the correspondence the ancient Greeks and Romans carried on by means of carrier pigeons."

The next morning, Ernest rose before me, and paid a visit to the dovecot. After breakfast I saw him coming in, holding in his hand a piece of paper, folded and sealed like a government letter, which he presented to me on bended knees, saying as he did so, "Noble and gracious lord of these lands, I beg you to excuse the postmaster of Felsenheim for the delay that the despatches from Sydney and New Holland have experienced; the packet was unavoidably retarded, and did not arrive till very late last evening."

His mother and I burst into a laugh at this ridiculous speech.

"Well," replied I, continuing the jest, "what are our subjects in Sydney and New Holland engaged in? Will the secretary open and read the despatches?"

At these words Ernest broke the seal of the paper and, elevating his voice, commenced:

"*The Governor-General of New Holland, to the Governor of Felsenheim, Falcon's Nest, the Field of the Sugar Canes, and the surrounding country.*

"GREETING,

"Noble and faithful ally! We learn with displeasure that three men, whom we suppose to be part of your colony, are making inroads into our savannas, and doing much damage to the animals of the province; we have also learned that frightful hyenas have broken through the limits of our quarter, and killed many of the domestic animals of our colonists. We therefore beg you, on one part, to call back your starving huntsmen; on the other, to provide measures to purge the country of the hyenas and other ferocious beasts that infest it. Especially I pray God, my Lord Governor, that He will keep you under His holy protection.

"Done under our hand and seal at Sydney Cove, Port Jackson, the twelfth day of the eighth month of the thirty-fourth year of the colony.

"PHILIP PHILLIPSON, *Governor*"

Ernest stopped in laughter at the effect the letter produced on us. I felt that there was some mystery, and I was anxious to get at the bottom of it. Ernest enjoyed my evident embarrassment, and, jumping up and down as children do, he let fall a new paper from his pocket. I caught it up, and was

going to read it, when he laid his hand on my arm, saying:

"Those also are despatches; they came from the Hermitage, and, although less pompous than General Phillipson's, perhaps they are more truthful. Listen, then, to a letter—"

"Oh, do explain to us," said I. "Did your brothers leave a letter before they went? Is the news of the hyena true? Did they act so rashly as to attack the animal?"

"Here is a letter from Fritz," replied Ernest; "my pigeon brought it to me last night."

He opened the paper and read the following words:

"DEAR PARENTS, and you, my good ERNEST, I will inform you of our arrival at the Hermitage; we there found a hyena, who had devoured several of our sheep. Francis alone has all the honor of having killed the monster, and he deserves much praise. We have passed the whole day in preparing the skin, which is very fine, and will be very useful. The pemmican is the most detestable stuff I ever tasted. Adieu! we embrace you tenderly in spirit.

"FRITZ"

"A true hunter's letter," cried I. "But this hyena, how could it have found its way into our domains? Has the palisade been overturned?"

"We shall probably receive another letter this evening," said Ernest, "and that will give us further details of the expedition."

After dinner a new pigeon was seen to enter the dovecot. Ernest removed from his wing the despatch he had brought. It read as follows:

"The night has been fine—the weather beautiful—excursion in cajack on lake—capture of some black swans—several new animals—apparition and sudden flight of an aquatic beast, entirely unknown to us—tomorrow at Prospect Hill.

"Be of good cheer.

"Your sons,

"FRITZ, JACK, and FRANCIS"

"It is almost a telegraphic despatch," said I, laughing; "it could not be more concise. Our huntsmen would rather fire a gun than write a sentence. But I really hope that the hyena which they killed is the only one in the country."

We received other letters at intervals; until finally a despatch arrived, which filled me with anxiety. It contained the following words:

"The palisade of the defile which leads to the savanna is destroyed; the sugar canes have been all trampled down, and we have discovered large footprints, like those of the elephant, in the sand. There

are also the prints of the hoofs of wild horses. Come quickly to our aid, dear parents; there is much to do for the safety of the colony. Lose not an instant, we beg of you."

I saddled the onagra without losing a moment, and, leaving Ernest and his mother to follow me on the next day, I set off for the defile. There was a distance of six leagues between my sons and me; but I accomplished it in three hours.

My children were surprised and overjoyed to see me arrive so promptly. The idea I had entertained of the ruin was but faint in comparison with the reality. The sugar canes had been trampled down, and the leaves torn off by some animal that I was sure must have been an elephant. All our trouble in erecting the palisade had been wasted; the stakes had been all torn up, the trees near-by deprived of their bark, the bamboos had been treated no better than the sugar canes, and every young shrub I had planted had been torn up. I examined attentively the footprints in the sand, and was convinced that the larger ones were those of the elephant, and the smaller ones those of a hippopotamus; but I could discover no traces of the hyena.

Ernest and his mother arrived after dinner, bringing with them the wagon, the cow, the ass, and all necessary utensils for our encampment, which was likely to last a good while.

We immediately began the construction of a solid fortification across the defile, one that would effectually keep out all intruders. This tiresome work occupied us constantly for more than a month. When it was finished, we constructed a simple kind of fort, to shelter us whenever we should visit the defile. It consisted of a platform of boards laid upon four trees, around which was a stockade of branches, with a roof of huge palm leaves. Our fort bore a strong resemblance to Falcon's Nest; and, surrounded as it was by green trees and flourishing verdure, it did not look much like a military construction.

Fritz and Jack promised themselves wonders from our new fort, which overlooked the savanna for a great distance. We could see the river running like a silver thread through the immense plain; and by means of spyglasses we could discern troops of buffaloes and other animals feeding around the brink.

One day Fritz made an excursion to the river of the savanna, and found among the rich vegetation there some unknown shrubs, of which he brought me specimens to examine. One kind bore, in large clusters, a beautiful green fruit, tipped at the end with violet, and shaped like a large gherkin; the others were covered with quantities of small flowers, interspersed with large fruits like cucumbers. On examination, I recognized them as being two of the

most precious productions of the tropics: the largest of the fruits was the cacao bean, of which chocolate is made; the other was the banana.

On another day Fritz ascended the river for a great distance, and was astonished at the majestic forests which bordered it. He encountered several families of turkeys and peacocks. Farther on the scene had changed; there were enormous elephants feeding along the bank, in troops of twenty or thirty; some were playing in the water, and squirting the cooling fluid over the heated bodies of their companions; tigers and panthers, too, lay sleeping in the sun, their magnificent fur contrasting strangely with the green bank upon which they reclined.

When we had returned to Felsenheim, my wife recalled to mind Falcon's Nest, which we had almost forgotten since our discovery of the salt cavern.

"It is wrong," said she, "to let that beautiful habitation go to ruin. Although Felsenheim offers us a sure protection in winter, yet Falcon's Nest, with its gigantic branches and pleasant verdure, is the most agreeable home we could possess."

My wife spoke reasonably, and I promised her that I would do as she wished. We left Felsenheim and took up our residence in our old dwelling. The roof that we had made over the roots was now plastered with gum and resin; the staircase was repaired; we substituted a bark roof for the old linen one over our chamber in the tree; we made a balcony all

around it, and repaired everything, so that it was a clean, agreeable habitation.

But the improvements at Falcon's Nest were but a prelude to more difficult works. Fritz had conceived the idea of fortifying Shark Island, and making that a sort of rallying point in case of danger. He teased me so about it, and his head was so full of plans and projects, that it was impossible to resist him, and the work was at length begun. We built a platform more than fifty feet in height, and placed on it a large capstan. The cannon were attached by strong ropes, hauled up by the capstan, and established with their mouths toward the sea. We placed a long pole in the rock, with a string and pulley, so that we could hoist up a flag at any time. How glad we felt when our work was done, and how proud we were of our ingenuity! When we had crowned this military construction with a flag, a cry of joy was uttered; and, as economical as I felt we must be in powder, six times we fired our cannon, and the rocks repeated the echo over a vast extent of ocean.

## CHAPTER XXXVI

# A GENERAL REVIEW OF THE COLONY AFTER TEN YEARS OF ESTABLISHMENT

IT is with dismay that I cast my eyes over the number of pages I have filled, and which every day grow more numerous.

Ten years have passed away since we were thrown on this coast, each year resembling the preceding one. We had our fields to sow, our harvests to gather, and our domestic cares to attend to. These formed the almost unbroken circle of our existence. My only desire is, that the end I intended in writing this journal may be fulfilled, and that my readers, if I ever have any, may learn how, with God's blessing, to provide for their necessities when thrown, as we have been, entirely on their own resources.

The ten years were but years of conquest and establishment. We had constructed three habitations, and built a solid wall across the defile, which would secure us against invasion from the wild beasts of the savanna. The part of the country in which we dwelt was defended by high mountains on one side, and the ocean on the other; we had traversed

the whole extent, and rested in perfect surety that no enemy lurked within it. Our principal habitations were beautiful, commodious, and especially very healthy. Felsenheim was a safe retreat for us during the storms of winter, while Falcon's Nest was our summer residence and country villa; the Hermitage, Prospect Hill, and even the establishment at the defile were like the quiet farmhouses that the traveler finds in the mountains of our own dear Switzerland.

Of all our resources, the bees had prospered most; experience had taught me how to manage them, and the only trouble that I had was to provide new hives each year for the increasing swarms.

We finished the gallery which extended along the front of our grotto; a roof was made to the rock above it, and it rested on fourteen columns of light bamboo, which gave it an elegant and picturesque appearance; large pillars supported the gallery, around which twined the aromatic vines of the vanilla and the pepper, and each end of the gallery ended in a little cabinet with elevated roofs, having the appearance of Chinese pavilions, surrounded by flowers and foliage. A flight of steps led up into the gallery, which we had paved with a sort of stone so soft when dug out as to be cut with a chisel, but hardening rapidly in the sun.

Our plantations had perfectly succeeded; and between the grotto and the bay was a grove of

trees and shrubs, planted in tasteful confusion, which gave the spot the aspect of an English garden.

Shark Island no longer was an arid bank of sand; palm and pineapple trees had been planted everywhere, and the earth was covered with a carpet of vivid green; while far above the trees towered a staff, upon the top of which the Swiss flag floated gaily in the breeze.

Our European trees had grown with strength and rapidity, but their fruits had lost their flavor; and whether because the soil or the air was unfavorable, the apples and pears became black and withered, while the plums and apricots were nothing but hard kernels surrounded by a tough skin. On the other hand, the native productions multiplied a hundredfold; the bananas, the figs, the guavas, the oranges, and the citron made our corner of the island a complete terrestrial paradise, where all the riches of vegetation were assembled.

But the abundance of fruit brought on another plague: multitudes of birds flocked to the spot. We kept our bird snares always ready, and it sometimes happened that an unknown animal would be taken in the trap; for example, the great squirrel of Canada, remarkable for its beautiful tufted tail and lustrous red skin, attracted hither probably by our almonds and chestnuts. Paroquets, in all their diversity of colors, would sometimes be caught;

blue jays, thrushes, yellow loriots, abounded plentifully, to the great hurt of our cherries, figs, and native grapes. Besides the birds by day, there were other destroyers by night, and we had a great deal of trouble to dislodge a nest of flying squirrels that had taken up their residence in the topmost branches of one of our finest trees.

Our beautiful flowers also attracted numerous guests: these were the humming birds; and it was one of our greatest amusements to watch these little birds flying around us, sparkling like precious stones, and hardly perceptible by the quickness of their motions. It was amusing to see these little fellows attack others twice their size, and drive them away from their nests. At other times they would tear in pieces the unlucky flower that had deceived their expectations of a rich feast. These little scenes diverted us, and we tried to induce the birds to remain in our neighborhood by fixing little pots of honey on the branches, and planting the flowers they preferred. Several couples hung their little nests, lined with soft cotton, to the branches of the vanilla which wound around the columns of the gallery, or on the vines of the pepper.

Whale Island had not been neglected; we adorned it with trees and shrubs; but it was here that we always performed our less cleanly avocations, such as the preparation of fish, the melting of fat, the tannery, and the candle making. The materials for

these works were kept under an overhanging rock, which protected them from the sun and storm.

Our cares were divided between these different establishments, without neglecting those that were more distant from us, and which we called our colonies. At the Hermitage we transformed the swamp into a superb rice field, which repaid our labor by plentiful harvests; we also planted cinnamon, which yielded us an ample return. Prospect Hill also had its share of attention; for each year, when the capers were ripe, we made an excursion thither, and gathered a large quantity, which my wife preserved in spice and vinegar; and when the tea plant began to put forth its leaves, again we set out, and gathered enough for our use. Both these plants had been found there by Fritz.

We made, from time to time, an excursion to the defile of the savanna, so that we might see whether any elephants, or other hurtful beasts, had penetrated into our plantations. Fritz then made an excursion in his cajack up the river of the savanna, and brought back to us a rich cargo of ginseng, cacao, and bananas.

The female buffalo and the cow had each year produced us a scion from their race; but we had only raised one heifer and a second bull. We had called the cow *Blanche*, on account of her pale yellow color, and the bull *Thunder*, as his voice was so powerful. We also possessed two more asses, which

we named *Arrow* and *Alert* on account of the swiftness of their course.

Our pigs were as wild as ever. The old sow had been dead many years; but she had left to her descendants a spirit of savage independence that all our exertions could not change. Our other beasts had multiplied in the same proportion, so that we could often kill one without any fear of impoverishing ourselves. Such was the state of the colony ten years after our arrival on the coast. Abundance reigned around us; we were as familiar with our part of the island as a farmer with his farm. It was a perfect paradise. It would have been an Eden, if we could but have looked upon men, our brothers!

For ten years had we watched both by sea and land for some traces of man's existence, but all in vain; and yet we hoped on, and still gathered up all our treasures of cotton and spices and ostrich plumes, in earnest hope that some day we might again see the blessed face of man.

My sons were no longer children. Fritz had become a strong and vigorous man; although not tall, yet his limbs had been developed by exercise. He was twenty-four years of age.

Ernest was twenty-three, and although of a good constitution, he was not so strong as his brother; his reflective mind had ripened; reason now aided his studious disposition; he had conquered his habit

of idleness, and was a well-informed young man, of sound judgment.

Jack had but little changed: he was as headlong at twenty as at ten; but he excelled in bodily exercises.

Francis was eighteen: he was stout and tall; his character, without any outstanding trait, was noble. He was reflective, without being as deep as Ernest; agile and skilful, but without surpassing Jack or Fritz. In general my sons were good and honest men, with sound principles, and a deep sense of religion.

My dear Elizabeth had not grown very old. As for me, my hair had become whitened by age, or, to speak more justly, there were but a few scattering locks left; the heat of the climate and excessive fatigue had taken them all away, although I still felt young and vigorous.

There was one bitter, sad thought that always haunted my mind; and turning my eyes to heaven, I would often say, "My God, who didst save us from shipwreck, and has surrounded us with so many blessings, still watch over us, I pray thee, and do not let those perish in solitude whom thy hand has saved."

## CHAPTER XXXVII

# FRITZ DISCOVERS PEARLS—NEWS OF A FELLOW CREATURE

ONE can easily imagine that my young family was not so easy to govern now as it was during the first few years of our stay.

My children would often absent themselves whole days, hunting in the forest, or clambering over the rocks; but, when they returned at evening, they would have so much to tell me concerning the rare and curious things that they had seen that I never had the heart to scold them.

Fritz one day went off in this manner, and caused us the greatest disquietude. He had taken with him some provisions, and—as if the land was not large enough for him—also his cajack, and gone out to sea. He had set out before daylight, and night was approaching, but nothing could be seen of him. My wife was in a state of the greatest suspense; so I launched the canoe, and we set out for Shark Island. There, from the top of the flagstaff, we displayed our flag and fired an alarm cannon. A few moments after, we saw a black spot in the far distance, and, by the aid of a spyglass, we discovered our beloved

Fritz. He advanced slowly toward us, beating the sea with his oars. Meeting him on shore, we saw that his boat was loaded with different things.

"It appears," said I, "my dear Fritz, that your day has not been an unprofitable one; and blessed be God that He has returned you safe and sound."

"Yes," replied Fritz, "blessed be God; for, besides the booty which you see, I think I have made a discovery worth more to us than all the treasures of the earth."

These words, half-whispered in my ear, excited my curiosity, but I thought I would say nothing until the voyager had taken breath. We brought on shore his sack, filled with large oysters, as it appeared to me. Then we sat down quietly in the gallery to listen to Fritz's narrative.

"I had long ago intended to make an expedition to the eastward, where we have never explored," said he. "This morning, before you awoke, I softly arose and ran, as is my custom, to the borders of the sea. The weather was so beautiful, the waves so tranquil, that I could not resist the temptation. I called my eagle, seized a hatchet, jumped into the cajack, and, falling into the current of Jackal's River, was hurried out toward the shoals where our vessel was wrecked. I directed my course toward the eastern coast, among shoals and rocks covered with the nests of sea birds, who flew around me uttering piercing cries. Whenever the rocks offered any sur-

face, you would see great marine monsters extended in the sun, while others were playing and bellowing frightfully in the neighboring waters. There were sea lions and elephants and walruses. It seemed that this was the general rendezvous of these monsters; for I saw, in coasting along the shore, several places strewed with their bones and ivory teeth.

"I must confess," said Fritz, "that I did not feel very safe; and I endeavored, as far as I was able, to pass through the shoals unperceived. I stopped my course before a magnificent portico of rocks, like the arch of an immense bridge, under which the sea flowed in like a canal, while the rock on each side of the entrance advanced out into the sea. From the other extremity of this somber vault issued a feeble light. A delicious coolness filled the cavern. On all sides numbers of the little coast swallows were flying about.

"I advanced boldly through the passage," went on Fritz, "and came out into a magnificent bay, with low and fertile shores. Trees and shrubs everywhere varied the beauty of the scene. On the right, a vast mass of rocks rose up; on the left rolled a calm and limpid river; and beyond this was a thick swamp, which ended in a dense forest of cedars. While I was coasting along the shores of the bay, I perceived at the bottom of the transparent waters beds of shells resembling large oysters. 'Here,' said I to myself, 'is something that is much better than our

little oysters at Felsenheim; if they taste good, I will take some home.' I detached some with my hook and threw them on the sand, without getting out of my canoe, and set to work to obtain more.

"When I returned with a new load, I found that the oysters I had first deposited on the sand were opened, and the sun had already begun to corrupt them. I took up one or two; but instead of finding the nice fat oyster I expected, I found nothing but a hard, gritty meat. In trying to detach this from the shell, I felt some little round, hard stones, like peas, under my knife; I took them out, and found them so brilliant that I filled a little box with them which I had with me. Do you not think, father," added Fritz, "that they are really pearls?"

I took the box in my hand. "They are really pearls," cried I, "Oriental pearls of the greatest beauty. You have, in truth, discovered a treasure, my son, which one day will be, I hope, of immense value to us. We will pay a visit to this rich bay as soon as possible."

"I pursued my course," resumed Fritz, "along the coast, indented with creeks, and covered with verdure and flowers. I came up to the mouth of the river, the calm waters of which floated on tranquilly toward the sea; its surface, overgrown with water plants, resembled a verdant prairie covered with different sorts of birds. I then directed my course toward the other promontory, opposite the

arch by which I had entered. I endeavored to leave the bay; but the tide had risen so high that it filled the vault, and I was obliged to await its ebb. I stepped on shore, as I saw on all sides, popping up out of the water, the heads of marine animals, which appeared about the size of a calf, and they plunged and frisked about in such a manner that I was afraid they would overset my cajack; so I secured it to a point in the rock.

"Then a great number of sea birds clustered around me. They came up so close that I whirled my staff around to keep them off, and in doing so knocked down a very large bird, an albatross, I think. Taking a sack full of oysters, I made preparations for my return. I soon passed through the arch, and sailed quietly along, until I saw your flag and heard the report of the cannon."

After this narrative my son drew me aside and confided to my ear an important secret.

"A very singular circumstance," said he, "happened on my voyage. In examining the albatross which I had knocked down, I saw a piece of linen around one of its feet. I untied it, and read these words written upon it in English: '*Save the poor shipwrecked sailor on the smoking rock.*'

"I cannot express to you, father, what I felt on seeing this linen. I read and re-read the line. I cried aloud to the Almighty that it might but be true. From this moment my only thought shall be

to search for the smoking rock, to save the sufferer—my brother—my friend. Oh! once more perhaps I may see a human being.

"An idea occurred to me to attach the linen again to the foot of the albatross, and to write upon a second piece, which I fastened to the other foot, the following sentence in English: '*Have confidence in God: succor is near.*' If the bird returns to the place whence it came, thought I, the person can read the answer: at all events there will be no harm in trying this experiment. The albatross had been stunned, and I poured some hydromel down its throat to revive it. I attached my note to its foot, and let it go. The bird hesitated for a moment, and then darted rapidly away in an easterly direction, which decided me to take that route in my search.

"And now, father," continued Fritz with emotion, "what do you think of this event? If we could find a new friend, a new brother—for certainly we will go in search of the stranger, oh yes, we will go—what joy! what happiness! But, alas! what despair if we should not succeed! The reason I did not communicate this to my brothers and my mother was to spare them the agonies of a hope which, after all, might never be realized."

My son pronounced these last words with sadness.

"You have acted very prudently," said I, "and I am glad that you have sufficient strength of mind

to resist the temptation of immediately flying to the assistance of the sufferer. As for the result of any expedition of discovery, I cannot say much. The albatross is a traveler bird, and it flies extremely swiftly; the linen might have been put on its foot thousands of miles from here; and even if near, perhaps years ago. But continue to keep the secret, and I will try to think of some way to save the poor unfortunate."

My sons now begged me to start immediately for the newly discovered pearl fishery.

"Softly," said I; "before riding, you must saddle your horse. Let each one of you try to invent something useful for our purpose, and then we will start."

Each member of the party set his ingenuity to work. I forged for myself two large wooden-handled, iron rakes and two small hooks of the same metal. With these I intended to loosen the oysters. Ernest made a sort of butterfly net with scissors attached, intended to receive the birds' nests. Jack constructed a kind of ladder of bamboo, with a hook of iron at the top and a spike at the bottom, so that it should rest firmly in the rocks. Francis, very adroit in making nets, made several very strong ones to hold our oysters.

We next prepared our provisions for the voyage: two hams were cooked, cassava cakes, barley bread, rice, nuts, almonds, and other dry fruits; and for drink we took a barrel of water, and one of hydromel.

These stores, with our tools and finishing implements, loaded down the boat. A fresh and favorable breeze and a slightly ruffled sea induced us to embark immediately. Francis and his mother were left to guard the shore. We took with us young Knips, the successor of our good old monkey, Jack's jackal, Flora, Braun, and Folb. Jack occupied the second seat in Fritz's cajack. Ernest and I conducted the loaded canoe.

The cajack led the way, and we followed, steering our course through the shoals and rocks with the greatest difficulty, until we reached the imposing headland behind which, Fritz said, was the Bay of Pearls. Arch rose above arch, column above column as in the front of an old Gothic cathedral. We penetrated into the vault; it was somber and gloomy, and only lighted by a few openings in the rock.

The noise of our oars frightened the peaceable birds, and they flew about in such numbers as almost to render it impossible to guide the boat; but when our eyes became used to the darkness, we saw that every niche and corner was filled with their nests. These nests resembled white cups, were as transparent as horn, and were filled, like the nests of other birds, with feathers, and dry sticks of some sort of perfumed wood.

The trial which we had made of this substance, after boiling it with salt and spices, convinced us that it was a delicate and wholesome food; besides,

we knew how highly it was valued in China, and we were so possessed with the idea that, some day or other, a vessel would arrive on our shores, with which we could trade, that I resolved to gather a considerable number of these nests, only taking care to leave those which contained eggs or young ones. Fritz and Jack climbed like cats along the rocks and detached the nests, which they gave to Ernest and me, who placed them in a large sack.

The flood tide carried us rapidly forward and we issued into a beautiful bay. The water was so calm and pure that we could see the fish far below us. I recognized the white fish, the shining scales of which are used as false pearls.

The day was too far advanced to commence our pearl fishing, and we appeased our hungry stomachs with some slices of ham, fried potatoes, and some cassava cakes; and, after having lighted up fires along the coast, to keep off wild beasts, we left the dogs on shore and went on board the canoe, Knips being installed on the mast as watchman. We drew the sail over our heads, and, wrapping ourselves in our bearskins, soon sank to rest.

We rose at daylight, and, after a frugal breakfast, commenced our labors in the pearl fishery. With the aid of the rakes, hooks, nets, and poles, we soon brought in a large quantity of the precious oysters. We heaped them all up in a pile on the shore, so that the heat of the sun would open them.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

# AN ENCOUNTER WITH A LION AND A LIONESS—A SAVAGE

THAT evening, while our supper was cooking, a deep, prolonged cry suddenly rang through the forest. It was the first time we had ever heard such unearthly tones; the rocks echoed it, and we felt seized with sudden terror; the dogs and the jackal also commenced howling horribly.

"What a diabolical concert!" said Fritz, jumping up and seizing his gun, "some danger must be near. Build up the fire," continued he, "and while I try to discover the danger in my cajack, you retire to the canoe."

We threw on the fire all the wood we could find cut, and, losing no time, regained the canoe. Fritz jumped into the cajack, and was soon lost in the twilight.

During all this time the roarings continued and appeared to approach nearer to us. Our dogs gathered around the fire, uttering plaintive moans. Our poor little monkey seemed to suffer painfully from fear. I imagined that it was a leopard or a panther, which had been attracted by the remains of the wild boar in the wood. My doubts did not last

long, for we soon discovered by the pale light of our fires a terrible lion, larger and stronger than those in the royal menageries of Europe.

In two or three leaps he bounded over the space which separated the wood from the shore; he stood immovable for a moment, and then commenced lashing his flanks with his tail, and roaring furiously, every moment crouching down as if to spring on us. Every moment he would run to the stream, lap up some water, and then return. I remarked with anguish that the animal came nearer and nearer to the shore; and at length he lay crouched down, his flaming eyes fixed directly on us. Half in fear, half in despair, I raised my gun, and was about to fire, when suddenly I heard a report; the animal bounded up, gave a yell, and fell lifeless on the earth.

"'Tis Fritz," murmured Ernest, pale with terror.

"Yes, it is he," I cried, "our brave Fritz; he has saved us from a terrible death; let us go to him." In two strokes of the oars we were on shore; but our dogs began to bark terribly. I did not neglect this indication; we threw more wood on the fire, and again jumped into the boat. It was time; for scarcely were we secure, when a second enemy rushed from the forest. It was not so large as the first, but its roar was frightful. This time it was a lioness, probably the companion of the superb animal which we had just killed. The lioness ran straight up to the corpse of her late partner, smelled it, and licked

The lioness ran straight up to the corpse of her late partner

up the blood. When she was convinced that he no longer lived, she set up a howl of rage that pen could not describe; she lashed her sides and opened her enormous mouth, as if she would devour us.

Again Fritz fired, and the shot, less fortunate than the first, only broke the shoulder of the animal. The wounded lioness commenced rolling on the sand, foaming with rage; but all three of our dogs rushed upon her. Braun and Folb seized the animal in the flanks, and Flora caught hold of the throat. Another shot would have put an end to the combat, but I was afraid of wounding the dogs; so I jumped from the boat, and, running up to the animal, who was held fast by the dogs, I plunged my hunting knife direct to her heart. The blood spouted out, and the lioness fell; but the victory had cost us dear, for there lay our poor Flora, dead under the terrible wounds she had received.

We lighted our torches, and directed our course toward the field of battle; we found poor Flora, with her teeth yet clutching the throat of her enemy, while the royal couple lay majestically extended on the sand.

"What a terrible range of teeth!" said Ernest, as he raised up the head of the lion.

"Yes, and what frightful claws!" said Jack, "wouldn't they make nice holes in your skin?"

"Poor Flora!" said Fritz, as he detached the dead body of our dear dog from that of the lioness;

"she has done for us today what our old ass did in the case of the boa. Come, Ernest, see if you cannot induce your muse to compose an epitaph."

"Ah! my muse, I must confess, has been too terribly frightened to make any rhymes."

"Tush! go and meditate while we dig the grave of our poor hunter, and be sure to be ready when we are done."

Flora received the honors of a funeral by torch-light; we dug a grave, and silently placed in it the remains of the faithful animal, and a flat stone served to mark her resting place. Ernest composed the following legend, which he read to us, saying that he was too frightened for poetry, and Flora must be contented with prose:

Here Lies
FLORA, A DOG
remarkable
for her courage and devotion.
She died
under the claws of a lion,
on whom
she also inflicted death.

At sunrise next morning we were up, stripped our noble prey of their superb furs, and set sail for Felsenheim. Fritz set off before us, as if to serve as pilot; but when he had conducted us through the vault and over the shoals, he rowed up to our canoe, and, handing me a paper, shot off again like an arrow. I opened the paper quickly, and found that,

instead of having forgotten the albatross and the smoking rock, he was going in search of the unfortunate sailor. I had a thousand objections to make to this romantic project; but Fritz rowed so fast I could barely halloo through the speaking trumpet, "Return soon, and be prudent," before he was out of sight.

At home, the different treasures we had brought, the lion skins, the pearls, the Nankin, became the objects of a thousand questions, but they could not drive away the thoughts of Fritz; and my wife said she would willingly give up all our cargo if she could only see her beloved son.

I had not yet spoken to my wife concerning the reason of Fritz's absence, as I did not wish to give rise to hopes which were so unlikely to be realized; but now I thought that it was my duty to do so. I therefore confided to her the secret of the albatross.

Five days passed away and still Fritz had not returned. His mother was so worried that I proposed to sail in the pinnace to the Bay of Pearls. Early the next day we were in sight of the headland, when suddenly the vessel ran against a black mass, and was nearly thrown over by the shock. The boat soon righted, and I perceived that the obstacle was not a point of rock, but a blower whale, for we soon saw him throw up into the air two spouts of water. A discharge of artillery prevented the huge monster from overturning us. The waves carried

the enormous body to a sand bank a little distance from the shore, and there it lay like a stranded ship.

Suddenly Ernest uttered a loud scream. "A man! a savage!" said he, and he pointed out to us in the distance a sort of canoe dancing over the waves. The person in it seemed to have perceived us, for he advanced and then made toward land, as if to make known his discovery to his companions. I had not the slightest doubt that we had fallen in with a band of savages, and we began to fortify our boat against their arrows, by making a bulwark of the stalks of maize and corn we had brought with us. We loaded our cannons, guns, and pistols, and stood ready behind our rampart. Ernest observed that, if we used the speaking trumpet, possibly our savage might understand some words of the half-dozen languages we were familiar with.

The advice appeared good. I took up the speaking trumpet and bellowed out with all my force some words of Malay; but still the canoe remained immovable, as if its master had not comprehended us.

"Instead of Malay," said Jack, "suppose we try English." So saying, he caught up the trumpet, and in his clear, loud tone pronounced some common sailor phrases, well known to all who have ever been on board ship. The device succeeded, and we saw the savage advancing toward us. Nearer and nearer he came, and at last we recognized in the painted savage our own dear Fritz.

## CHAPTER XXXIX

# SIR EDWARD MONTROSE—OUR ADOPTED SISTER—ATTACK OF WOLVES

WHEN Fritz reached us, we commenced asking him all manner of questions, till the poor fellow was so confused he did not know what to do. I demanded an answer on two points only—whether his excursion had been satisfactory, and why he had played this farce of dressing himself like a savage.

"As to the purpose of my excursion," said he, with a joy he could scarcely conceal, "I have attained it. As for my costume, I mistook you for Malay pirates, and, in the fear that you were enemies, I endeavored to disguise myself by painting the upper part of my body with powder, soaked in water. The two reports of the cannon that I heard convinced me more and more that you were enemies; the Malay words that you addressed to me confirmed me, and I should still have been endeavoring to deceive you, and you would still have been in fear of me, if Jack had not bawled out those sailor phrases in his unmistakable voice."

We all began to laugh over the farce we had

been enacting; and Fritz, drawing me aside, said, in an eager, joyous tone, "I have succeeded, papa: the hand of God conducted me to the dwelling place of the poor shipwrecked girl—for it was a woman that had written those lines. Three years has she lived on that smoking rock, all alone, destitute of everything! The poor girl has made me promise not to betray her sex, except to you and my mother. I have brought her with me; she is near-by, on a little island just beyond the Bay of Pearls; come and see her. Oh, do not say anything to my brothers. I want to enjoy their surprise when they find I have brought them back a sister, for I am sure she will allow them to call her so."

I consented to the wish of my son, who, jumping into his cajack, piloted us through the shoals and reefs that were scattered along the coast, until we reached a shady island not far from the Bay of Pearls. We sailed close up to the shore and fastened the pinnace to the trunk of a fallen tree. Fritz was on shore, and had entered a little wood in the middle of the island before we had yet landed. We followed him into the wood, and soon found ourselves in the vicinity of a hut, with a fire burning before it, on which some fish were cooking in a large shell. Fritz uttered a peculiar kind of halloo, and we saw, descending from a large tree, a young and handsome sailor, who, turning his timid eyes on us, stood still, as if he dared not approach.

It was such a long time since we had seen a man—ten years!—and society had become so strange a thing to us, that though our hearts felt for the young stranger, our tongues remained dumb.

The silence was broken by Fritz, who, taking the young sailor by the hand, advanced toward us. "My father, my mother, and you, my brothers," said he, "behold a friend—a brother—that I present you, a new companion in misfortune—Sir Edward Montrose, who, like ourselves, has been shipwrecked on the coast."

"He is welcome among us," was the general cry; and, approaching the young sailor, and taking her hand, I comforted and encouraged her, assuring the seeming man that among us he would always find food and sustenance; my wife and I would be his parents, and my sons his brothers. My wife, moved by compassion, opened her arms, and the young sailor rushed into them, bursting into a flood of tears, as he thanked us for our kindness. The most lively joy now reigned in our little circle, and his brothers poured question after question upon Fritz, who joyfully replied, "I will tell you all afterward; let us attend now to our new brother."

Supper was served, and my wife brought out a bottle of her spiced hydromel to add to the feast. Everybody spoke at once, and my sons addressed their new companion with such vivacity as to embarrass the timid stranger. My wife saw his dis-

tress, and, as it was late, she gave the signal for retirement, taking the sailor with her on the pinnace.

While my sons and I were lighting our watch-fires, the new comer naturally became the subject of conversation, and Fritz recounted to his brothers the whole history of the albatross. He became so excited in his story that he forgot the secret he had to keep. A word escaped him, and he called the young sailor "Emily."

"Emily!—Emily!" repeated his brothers, who had begun to doubt the mystery; "Emily!—Fritz has deceived us, and Sir Edward is a girl!"

In vain Fritz endeavored to bring back his words; it would not do, and the girl could no longer hide her sex by the hat and pantaloons.

The next morning it was a comic sight to see the embarrassment and awkwardness of my sons. My poor boys were not acquainted with the usages of polite society and the ease it inspires, and they appeared to a great disadvantage by the side of the beautiful English girl. As for Emily, she was very much astonished at the discovery the young men had made, and she retreated, as if for protection, to the arms of my wife; but a moment after, recovering herself, she advanced, and extending her hand to each one of the boys, gracefully demanded for the sister the friendship they had extended to the brother. Gaiety was reëstablished, and we sat down to break-

fast, which was composed of fruits, cold meat, and chocolate of our own making, which was a great treat to my new daughter, and recalled her native land to her mind.

After breakfast I proposed to return to the Bay of Pearls, where the whale stranded on the shore offered us a magnificent prey. Arrived there, we found we had no barrels to hold the oily substance with which the head and dorsal bone of this animal are filled. Emily mentioned a process she had seen employed in India, which was to put the half-liquid substance in wet linen bags. The idea appeared excellent, and we immediately put it into practice. I gathered all the sacks I could find, and dipping them in the sea water stretched them open with pieces of branches. Then we took the canoe and the cajack and set off, leaving the two women under the safeguard of Turk, and taking with us Folb, Braun, and the jackal.

The whale lay extended like a huge wall; our dogs ran up to it, and a moment after we heard some animals howling. We hastened up, and found our dogs valiantly contending with a troop of black wolves, who were devouring the whale. Two of their number were already stretched on the sand, two others were yet engaged with the dogs, and the rest at our approach fled toward a little wood.

Fritz now climbed like a cat up the back of the monster, and cut open the enormous head with a

hatchet. Then with a ladle he dipped the oil out of the head, and emptied it into one of the sacks which I held ready, while Francis covered the outside with wet sand and mortar, forming a solid crust through which none of the grease could escape. Our sacks were soon full, for as fast as Fritz emptied the head, the cavity was filled by a fresh supply from the backbone.

The tide was high, but the load was too heavy for the boat; we therefore were obliged to return without the oil to the little island where we had first found Emily. We left the sacks ranged on the sand. I was uncertain how we could get them home. The pinnace could not approach the bank near enough without risk of running aground, and our other boats were not large enough. Everyone gave his advice; when it came to Emily's turn, she observed, in her soft, silvery tone, "If you are willing, my dear papa"—for already she had accustomed herself to address me by that name—"I will promise to bring over your sacks."

The next morning, before my sons were awake, Emily lightly descended the ladder of the pinnace, seated herself in Fritz's cajack, untied it, and rowed off with a grace and ease that surprised me. I would have called her back, but the little vixen gaily kissed her hand, and soon was far on her way toward the bank of sand. She had chosen just the right time; the tide was rising, and had just commenced to wet

the bottom of the sacks. The adventurous girl jumped on shore, fastened all the sacks by cords to a rope which she had with her, tied the rope to the cajack, and, again embarking, drew after her all the sacks, which, their contents being light, floated on the water.

After dinner we began our preparations to set out for Felsenheim, where we desired to install our new companion. We packed up Emily's treasures, both those she had saved from shipwreck and those she had made herself. Fritz had made her a box which held them all, and they really were very curious, consisting of clothes, ornaments, domestic utensils, and all sorts of articles which she had made in her exile, out of the scanty material she had at her disposal.

Emily now bade adieu to the island that had received her, and the trees that had sheltered her during her short sojourn. We could not leave the place without giving it a name, so we called the bay in which we anchored "Happy Bay," in allusion to the joyful meeting we had had there. We now took the direction of the Bay of Pearls, where we were obliged to make a short stay before returning to Felsenheim. I had noticed there, among the stones which strewed the shore, a sort of rock which it appeared to me could be easily converted into lime. I resolved to establish a limekiln without delay on the beach. The work obliged us to sit up

a great part of the night. To shorten the time, I persuaded Fritz to give us a more complete account than he had hitherto done of the manner in which he had found our new sister, and the details of his voyage. My sons formed a circle about Fritz, who thus commenced his story.

"You all remember," said he to his brothers, "the manner in which I left you. The sea was calm; but suddenly a violent wind arose, gradually increasing to a perfect hurricane with rising waves, rain, thunder, and lightning. My little barque was not strong enough to resist the tremendous sea, and all that I could do was to abandon myself to the current.

"After several hours the wind fell and the air calmed. I was far from all the places that we were acquainted with; the tempest had thrown me on a coast entirely new to my eyes; the shape of the rocks, the gigantic cliffs which seemed to lose themselves in the clouds, the vegetation, the animals I saw on the coast, the birds which flew about me, all announced a new world. My first care was to look carefully around and see whether some light smoke did not rise behind the rocks; for, as you know, the Smoking Rock was my only thought. Full of hope, I rowed along the coast. Night came on, and I passed it in the cajack.

"The farther I advanced next morning, the more the coast appeared to change its aspect. I encoun-

tered, from time to time, majestic rivers, which flowed silently on and mingled with the sea. The mouth of one of them resembled an immense bay, and I decided to ascend it some little distance; its banks were covered with large trees, willows, and vines, so thickly woven together that they resembled a huge mat, covered with birds, monkeys, and even squirrels.

"Returning to the coast, I sailed on a long time without being able to land; the rivers and shores were defended by ferocious guards, for I recognized elephants, lions, panthers. Several leagues farther along, the coast changed, and appeared peaceable, but desolate; the breeze which murmured among the vines, and the song of some harmless birds were the only noises which broke the calm stillness. I resolved to land, so I fastened my cajack as strongly as possible, and jumped lightly to the shore. Being hungry, I lighted my fire, and began to prepare a juicy dinner from a fat goose which I had shot while landing, and a dozen of oysters.

"I rose long before daylight next morning and resumed my voyage. The country through which I now sailed was of an aspect entirely different from any I had ever yet seen. There were beautiful green plains, dotted over with clumps of towering palms; little lakes surrounded with willows, upon the borders of which sported herds of elephants; thick tufts of cactus of all sorts, loaded with flowers and fruits,

which the enormous rhinoceros seemed to devour without paying any attention to the thorns; beautiful clumps of the mimosa, the high tops of which the towering giraffe devoured with as much ease as a goat would a small shrub.

"Coming to a picturesque river, I resolved to ascend it. The water slipped gently under the prow of my little cajack—nothing appeared to indicate any danger; there were no serpents on the bank, no horrid beasts in the forests. I floated tranquilly on, enjoying the fresh breeze and the cool shade of the overhanging trees, when suddenly there appeared before me a long throat, armed with rows of strong sharp teeth; it was distended to its full capacity as if it would take in at one mouthful myself, the cajack, and the oars. I instantly comprehended the extent of my danger, and, seizing one of the oars, I drove it with all my strength direct into the yawning mouth of the monster, who disappeared in an instant, leaving a long trace of blood behind him, showing that the wound I had made was of some importance. I did not remain long on this river; two other monsters of the same nature as the first rose up to the surface of the water. They were alligators, the most terrible kind among these animals.

"But I had escaped from one danger only to fall into another. At a little distance from the River of Alligators, while coasting along a little wood, I

observed that the trees were loaded with the rarest and most beautiful of birds, among which were lyras, paroquets, humming birds, and birds of paradise—in one word, a complete assemblage of all that array of beautiful plumage which decorates the forests of the New World. I landed, attached my cajack to the bank, and walked up to the wood, holding my eagle unhooded in my hand. I cast him off, and he returned with a superb paroquet, whose flame-colored feathers sparkled in the sun's rays. While I was occupied in examining him, I heard behind me a light rustling on the sand, which I thought was merely caused by a little land turtle, or some such animal, and I turned carelessly round. It was well I did so; for not twelve paces from me there was a splendid royal tiger with open mouth, crouched down as if about to spring upon me. I stood as if struck with stupor; a mist came over my eyes, and scarcely could I raise my gun, when suddenly my brave eagle, comprehending my danger, flew boldly at the advancing tiger, and began to pick at his eyes. This timely succor saved me, for it enabled me to collect my senses. Leveling my gun, I discharged its contents into the right flank of my enemy, and then two pistol balls lodged in the throat completed my victory. The tiger lay dead; but alas! my victory had cost me dear, for my poor eagle fell at the same time with his conquered enemy, who had seized him in his claws and had torn him

"The delicate contour of the features convinced me that I was in the presence of a female"

in pieces. I picked him up, weeping bitterly over my loss, and carried him to the cajack.

"I quitted the shore, doubled a little cape, and, suddenly, from the summit of the gray rocks which bordered the coast, I perceived a light cloud of smoke rising in the air. I turned my canoe in the direction of the long-sought-for signal. I landed, and scrambled up the rocks until I arrived at a platform on which I perceived a human creature. At the noise which I made in approaching, the individual, who was arranging the fire, rose, perceived me, uttered a cry of surprise and joy, and then, joining his hands, stood still, as if waiting for me to speak. Notwithstanding the midshipman's dress, the exclamation and the delicate contour of the features convinced me that I was in the presence of a female. I stopped about ten paces from her, and calling to my memory all I knew of English, I said in a subdued tone, 'I am the liberator whom God has sent you. I have received the message of the albatross.'

"I must have pronounced these words very badly, as Emily did not at first comprehend them; I repeated them, however, and after a few moments we understood each other. Gestures, looks, accents all filled up the blank that words had left vacant. I spoke to my new sister about the castle of Felsenheim, Falcon's Nest, our shipwreck, and our ten years' sojourn on the coast, where we lived in almost

European luxury. On her part, she recounted to me the history of her childhood, her shipwreck, and her existence on the Island of the Smoking Rock, making a fine story for my papa to write out in the long winter evenings. Emily graciously invited me to supper, after which we passed the remainder of the night, I in my cajack, she in the branches of a tree, where she always slept from the fear of wild beasts.

"The next morning we again met. Emily had already prepared breakfast, which consisted of fruit and broiled fish. The repast being over, the sea looked so calm that I thought we had better start; so, after packing up all her curiosities, and putting them on board the cajack, we took our seats and set off. We sailed on a long time; but an accident happened to my little barque, and I was obliged to put in at the little island which you have called 'Good Rencounter,' in memory of our meeting. The rest of the story you know."

"Oh! I am so sorry it is done," cried Jack, as Fritz finished his story.

## CHAPTER XL

# EMILY'S OWN STORY—THE WINTER SEASON ONCE MORE

THE next morning, when all the family were assembled for breakfast, it seemed natural that Emily's history should open the day. I wanted the dear girl herself to tell it; but she was so timid that I could do nothing with her. Fritz was therefore entreated to act as her proxy, and resume his recital.

"As soon as I was able to understand my new sister," said he, "I asked her by what course of events she had been thrown on the desert coast where I now found her.

"She told me that she was born in India, of English parents, and that her father, whose name was Montrose, after having served as major in a British regiment, obtained the command of an important English colony. He had the misfortune to lose his wife only three years after his marriage, so that all his affections centered in their only child. He took charge of her education, and devoted all the time he could spare from his official duties in developing the precious qualities which nature had endowed his dear daughter with. Not content with

providing her with every means for mental improvement, he endeavored to make her a strong, healthy woman, capable of facing and resisting danger. Such was Emily's education up to the age of sixteen; she managed a fowling piece as well as a needle, rode as gracefully and firmly as the best cavalry officer, and shone resplendent in her father's brilliant saloons.

"Major Montrose, having been appointed colonel, was ordered to return with part of his regiment to England. This circumstance forced him to separate himself from his daughter, as naval discipline did not allow women on board a line-of-battle ship in time of war. It was arranged, however, that she should sail the same day that he did, in another ship, the captain of which was an old friend of her father's, who would take care of his daughter.

"The voyage at its commencement was prosperous and agreeable, but before many days a terrible tempest arose. The ship was thrown off her course, and a furious wind drove her down upon our rocky coast. Two shallops were launched upon the angry waves, and a chance of safety offered to the shipwrecked. Emily found a place in the smallest—the captain was in the other. The storm continuing, the boats were soon separated, and the one that contained Emily was broken in pieces. The poor girl alone, of all the crew, was fortunate enough to escape death. The waves carried her, half fainting, to the foot of the rock where I discovered her. She

crawled under the shade of a projecting rock, and, sinking on the sand, slept for four-and-twenty hours. There she passed several days, abandoned to dark despair, with no nourishment but some birds' eggs, which she found on the rocks.

"At the end of that time, the sun reappearing and the sea growing calm, the poor castaway thought of the crew in the large shallop and, in the hope that they might see her, she resolved to establish signals of distress. As she had worn a midshipman's uniform on board ship, by order of her father, she had a box in her pocket containing a flint, a knife, and other articles. She picked up some pieces of wood which the sea had thrown on the sand, carried them to the summit of the rock, and there kindled a fire, which she never allowed to go out.

"You can easily imagine how drearily passed the first days of Emily's exile; she had to contend against all the horrors of hunger and the desert. How thankful she felt for the education that her father had given her: it had endowed her with courage and resolution far beyond her sex. She placed her trust in God and hoped on. She built a hut, fished, hunted, tamed birds—among others a cormorant, which she taught to catch fish—in one word, she lived alone for three long, dreary years."

Fritz stopped; his eyes fell upon the heroine of his story, who could hardly conceal her embarrassment.

"My child," said I, "you are but another proof that God never withholds His aid from those who desire it. That which you have done for three years a poor Swiss family have done for ten, and heavenly aid has never been withheld from them."

The poetic description we had given concerning the salt grotto at Felsenheim, and our aërial palace at Falcon's Nest, had rendered Emily exceedingly curious to judge for herself concerning all these wonders. The next day we weighed anchor just as dawn was breaking. When we hove in sight of Prospect Hill, I proposed to stop and take a look at the farmhouse; but Fritz and Francis asked permission of me to go on home in the cajack, so that they could have all things prepared for us.

From Prospect Hill we sailed to Shark Island, where we secured, in passing, a fine quantity of the soft wool of the Angora rabbits. From Shark Island we directed our course toward Felsenheim, and we could just distinguish it when a salute of ten guns greeted our ears.

We returned the polite salute by a salvo of eleven guns, performed by Jack and Ernest in a style that would have done honor to a practiced cannoneer. Soon after we saw Fritz and Francis coming toward us in their canoe; they received us at the entrance of the bay, and followed us to the shore. They landed before us, and the moment Emily's foot touched the sand, a hurrah resounded through the air, and Fritz,

springing forward, presented her his hand, like a gallant cavalier, and led her up to the portico of the grotto.

There a new spectacle awaited us, a table was spread in the middle of the gallery, and loaded with all the fruits that the country produced. Bananas, figs, guavas, oranges, rose up in perfumed heaps upon flat calabashes. All the vases, coconut cups, ostrich eggs mounted on turned wooden pedestals, and urns of painted porcelain were filled with hydromel and milk; while a large dish of fried fish, and a huge roast turkey, stuffed with truffles, formed the solid part of the repast. A double festoon of flowers surrounded the canopy above the table, sustaining a large medallion on which was inscribed, "Welcome, fair Emily Montrose!" It was a complete holiday, and as dignified a reception as our means would allow. Emily sat down to table between my wife and myself; Ernest and Jack also took their places; while the two caterers of the feast, each with a napkin on his arm, did the honors of the table.

We passed from the table to the interior of the grotto, and our young companion had the apartment next ours for her use. She could not restrain her admiration; she was astonished that a man and four children could have done so much. The chateau in the tree at Falcon's Nest next received a visit; it had fallen into decay, from neglect, and we passed

a whole week in fitting it up. We then set out for the Hermitage to gather our rice and other grains, for the season was advancing, and some violent showers already warned us to hasten our preparations for the coming winter. Emily gave proof, during these labors, of an intelligence and good will which rendered her assistance very valuable; and she inspired everybody with such zeal and industry, that when the winter set in we were all prepared for it.

Ten years had accustomed us to the terrible winters, and we calmly listened to the wind and storm as it raged furiously without. We had reserved for the winter several quiet occupations, in which our new companion proved her skill and industry; she excelled in weaving and plaiting straw; and, under her direction, we made some light straw hats for summer, some elegant baskets, and conveniently arranged game bags. My wife was delighted with her adopted daughter, and Ernest found a companion whose fine education rendered her a conversable and intelligent woman. In fact, Emily had become to my wife and myself a fifth child, and a beloved sister for my sons.

## CHAPTER XLI

# CONCLUSION

IT is with a thousand different sensations that I write the word *conclusion.* It recalls to my mind all that has passed. God is good! God is merciful is the reigning sentiment in my heart.

It was toward the end of the rainy season, the wind had lost its violence, and a patch of blue sky could now and then be seen; our pigeons had quitted the dovecot, and we ourselves ventured to open the door of the grotto, and taste the fresh air.

After we had cared for our gardens, which had suffered injury, Fritz and Jack set off in the cajack to Shark Island, to inspect our fort and colony there.

My sons, on their arrival, having examined the interior of the fort, and assured themselves that nothing of importance was damaged, began to look round and see if anything appeared on the horizon. All was blank. Wishing to see whether the cannon were in good order, they began firing away, as if they had all the powder in the world at their command. But what was their astonishment and emotion when, a moment after, they heard distinctly three reports of a cannon in the distance! They

could not be mistaken, for a faint light toward the east preceded each report. They resolved to hasten home and recount their adventure to us.

We had heared the reports of the cannon they had fired, and we could not imagine why they were hurrying back so fast. I called out, as loud as I could, "Halloo, there! what is the matter?" On they came, and, jumping on shore, cried out, "Oh, papa, papa, did you not hear them?"

"Hear what?" said I. "We have heard nothing but the noise your waste of powder made."

"You have not heard three other reports in the distance?"

"No."

"Why, we heard them plainly and distinctly."

"It was the echo," said Ernest.

This remark nettled Jack a little, and he replied sharply, "No, Mr. Doctor, it wasn't the echo; I think I have fired cannon enough in my lifetime to know whether that was an echo or not. We distinctly heard three reports of a cannon, and we are certain that some ship is sailing in this part of the world."

"If there is really a ship on our coasts," said I, "who knows whether it is manned by Europeans or by Malay pirates? Who knows whether we ought to rejoice or fear at its presence?"

We watched alternately under the gallery of the grotto, so that we could be ready in case of sur-

prise; but the night passed quietly away, and in the morning the rain commenced, and continued so violently during two long days that it was impossible for us to go out.

On the third day the sun reappeared. Fritz and Jack, full of impatience, resolved to return to Shark Island, and try a new signal. I consented; but, instead of the cajack, we took the canoe, and I went with them. On arriving at the fort we hoisted our flag, while Jack, ever impatient, loaded a cannon and fired it. Scarcely had the report died away when we distinctly heard a louder answering report in the direction of Cape Disappointment.

Jack could not contain himself for joy. "Men, men," cried he, dancing about us; "men, papa; are you sure of it now?" And, his enthusiasm communicating itself to us, we hoisted another and a larger flag on our flagstaff. Six other reports followed the first one we had heard.

Overpowered with emotion, we hastened to our boat, and were soon in the presence of the family. They had not heard the seven reports, but they had seen our two flags flying, and they were eagerly waiting for news.

I ordered that everything in the grotto should be put in a place of safety. My three youngest sons, my wife, and Emily set off for Falcon's Nest with our cattle, and I embarked in the cajack with Fritz, to reconnoiter. It was near midday when we set

out; we coasted along without discovering anything. But the certainty that we had heard the seven reports of the cannon kept up our courage. Suddenly, on doubling a little point, we beheld a fine European ship majestically reposing at anchor, with a long-boat at the side, and an English flag floating at the masthead.

If I had permitted it, Fritz would have thrown himself into the sea and swum off to the ship; but I was afraid that, notwithstanding the English flag, the vessel before us might be a Malay pirate, which had assumed false colors in order to deceive other vessels. We remained at a distance, not liking to venture nearer without being more certain what it was. We could see all that was passing on board the vessel. Two tents had been raised on the shore, tables were laid for dinner, quarters of meat were roasting before blazing fires, men were running to and fro. Two sentinels were on the deck of the vessel, and when they perceived us, they spoke to the officer on duty who stood near, and who turned his telescope toward us.

"They are Europeans," cried Fritz; "you can easily judge from the face of the officer. Malays certainly would be more dusky than that."

Fritz's remark was true; but yet I did not like to go too near. We sang a Swiss mountain song, and when we had finished, I cried out through my speaking trumpet these three words, *Englishmen,*

*good men!* But no answer was returned; our song, our cajack, and more than all our costume, I expect, marked us for savages. The officer made signs to us to approach, holding up knives, scissors, and glass beads, for which the savages of the New World are generally so desirous. This mistake made us laugh; but we did not approach, as we wished to present ourselves before them in better trim. We contented ourselves with exclaiming once more, *Englishmen,* and then darted off as fast as our boat could carry us.

We passed a whole day in preparing the pinnace, and loading it with presents for the captain, as we wished him to see that those whom he had taken for savages were beings far advanced in the arts of civilization. We set off at sunrise; the weather was magnificent, and we sailed gallantly along, Fritz preceding us as pilot.

When we could clearly distinguish the ship, a vivid joy was experienced by us all; my sons were dumb with pleasure and eagerness.

"Hoist the English flag," cried I; and a second after, a flag similar to the one on the ship fluttered from our masthead.

If we were filled with extraordinary emotions on seeing a European ship, the English were not less astonished to see a little boat with flowing sails coming toward them. Guns were now fired from the ship and answered from our pinnace, and, joining

Fritz in his cajack, I approached the ship to welcome the captain to our shores.

The captain received us with that frankness and cordiality that always distinguish sailors; and conducted us to the cabin, where a flask of Cape wine cemented the alliance between us.

I recounted to the captain, as briefly as possible, the history of our shipwreck, and our sojourn of ten years on this coast. I spoke to him of Emily, and asked him if he had ever heard of her father, Sir Edward Montrose. The captain not only knew him, but it was a part of his instructions to explore these latitudes, where, three years before, the ship *Dorcas*, which had on board the daughter of Commander Montrose, was supposed to have been wrecked, and to try to discover any tidings of the vessel or crew. He informed us that a tempest had thrown him off the course which he followed for Sydney and New Holland; and thus he had been driven on this coast, where he had renewed his wood and water. "It was then," added he, "that we heard the reports of cannon, which we answered; on the third day new discharges convinced us that we were not alone on the coast, and we resolved to wait until, by some means or other, we discovered who were our companions in misfortune. But we find an organized colony, and a sea power, whose alliance I solicit in the name of the sovereign of Great Britain."

This last sally made us laugh, and we cordially

pressed the hand which Captain Littleton extended to us.

The rest of the family were waiting some distance off in the pinnace. The captain, ordering his gig to be manned, arrived on board our vessel almost as soon as we did. We received him with every demonstration of joy and friendship, and Emily was half wild with happiness at the sight of a fellow countryman, and one who brought news of her father.

The captain brought with him an English family, whom the fatigues of the passage had rendered ill, consisting of Mr. Wolston, a distinguished machinist, his wife, and two daughters. My wife offered Mrs. Wolston her assistance, and promised her that her family should find every comfort and convenience at Felsenheim if they would return with us. They gladly consented, and we set out with them, taking leave of the captain, who did not like to pass the night away from his ship.

My readers can form an idea of the astonishment which was evinced by the Wolston family on seeing all our establishments. We pointed out to them Felsenheim with its rocky vault, the giant tree of Falcon's Nest, Prospect Hill, and all the marvels which were comprised in our domains. A frugal repast in the evening united both families under the gallery of the grotto, and my wife prepared, in the interior, apartments and beds to receive the newcomers.

The next morning Mr. Wolston came up to me.

"Sir," said he, "I cannot express all the admiration that I feel on regarding the wonders with which you are surrounded. The hand of God has been with you, and here you live happily, far away from the strife of the world, among the works of creation, alone with your family. I came from England to seek repose; where can I find it better than here? I shall esteem myself the happiest of men if you will allow me to establish myself in a corner of your domains."

This proposition of Mr. Wolston filled me with joy, and I immediately assured him that I would willingly share with him the half of my patriarchal empire.

The morning was devoted to the joy and pleasure that this news caused. But painful thoughts occupied my mind; the ship which now presented itself was the first we had seen in ten years, and probably as long a period might elapse before another appeared, should we let Captain Littleton and his ship leave us without any addition to his crew. These questions affected the dearest interests of our family. My wife did not wish to return to Europe; I was myself too much attached to my new life to leave it, and we were both at an age when dangers have no attraction, and ambition has resolved itself into a desire for repose. But our children were

young, their life was but just commencing, and I did not think it right to deprive them of the advantages which civilization and a contact with the world presented. Then again, Emily, since she had heard that her father was in England, did not conceal her desire to return; and although we regretted losing this amiable girl, yet it was impossible to detain her. So at last I spoke to my children of civilized Europe, of the resources of every kind which society offered to its members, and I asked them if they would depart with Captain Littleton, or be content to pass the remainder of their lives upon this coast.

Jack and Ernest declared that they would rather remain. Ernest, the philosopher, had no need of the world to interrupt his studies; and Jack, the hunter, found the domain of Falcon's Nest large enough for his excursions. Fritz was silent, but I saw by his countenance that he had decided to go. I encouraged him to speak; he confessed that he had a great desire to return to Europe, and his younger brother, Francis, declared that he would willingly accompany him.

Mr. Wolston also divided his family; he kept but one of his daughters; the other went on to New Holland. These family arrangements being finished, I hastened to inform the captain of the *Unicorn*. He readily consented to take our three passengers.

"I resign three persons," said he, "Mr. and Mrs. Wolston and one of their daughters; I take three more, and my number will not be affected."

The *Unicorn* remained eight days at anchor, and we employed them in preparing the cargo which was to be the fortune of our boys on arriving in Europe. All the riches that we had amassed—pearls, ivory, spices, furs, and all our rare productions, were carefully packed and put on board the ship, which we also furnished with meat and fruits.

On the eve of their departure, after a last conversation, in which I advised my sons always to carry out the principles in which they had been instructed, and so to live in this world that we might be united in the next, I gave Fritz this narration of our shipwreck and establishment on the desert coast, enjoining him expressly to have it published as soon after his arrival as he possibly could. This desire on my part, free from all vanity of authorship, had for its only object and hope that it might be useful to others as a lesson of patience, courage, perseverance, and submission to the will of God. Perhaps some day a father may take courage from the manner in which we bore our tribulations; perhaps some young person will see, in the course of this narrative, the value of a varied education.

I have not written this as a learned man would have done, and all my results may not have been arrived at according to the correct theory; but we

were in an extraordinary position, and were obliged to depend on our own resources.

We none of us slept much during the last night. At the dawn of day the cannon of the ship announced the order to go on board. We conducted our children to the shore; there they received our last embraces and benedictions.

The anchor has been weighed, the sails unfurled, the flag run up to the masthead, and a rapid wind promises speedily to separate us from our children.

I will not attempt to paint the grief of my dear Elizabeth—it is the grief of a mother, silent and profound. Jack and Ernest are weeping bitterly, and my own grief is, I must confess, but badly concealed.

I finish these few lines whilst the ship's boat is waiting. My sons will thus receive my last blessing. May God ever be with you. Adieu, Europe! adieu, dear Switzerland! Never shall I see you again! May your inhabitants be always happy, pious, and free!

# THE CHILDREN'S *Bookshelf*

## *Books That Every Child Should Own*

**BLACK BEAUTY**
Sewell. 15 full-page illus., 4 in color.

**THE STORY OF A BAD BOY**
Aldrich. 14 full-page drawings, 4 in color.

**KING ARTHUR AND HIS KNIGHTS**
Merchant. 16 full-page drawings, 4 in color.

**THE WONDER BOOK OF BIBLE STORIES**
Marshall. 4 full pages in color and 54 text illus.

**LAMB'S TALES FROM SHAKESPEARE**
Lamb. 12 full-page illus., 4 in color.

**THE ARABIAN NIGHTS**
Introd. by Orton Lowe. 63 illus., 3 in color.

**ROBIN HOOD**
Introd. by George C. Harvey. 20 full-page drawings, 4 in color.

**ALICE'S ADVENTURES IN WONDERLAND and THROUGH THE LOOKING GLASS**
Carroll. 89 illus. by Tenniel, 4 color plates.

**HEIDI**
Spyri. 25 illus., 4 in color.

**TREASURE ISLAND**
Stevenson. 15 full-page drawings, 4 in color.

**HANS BRINKER or The Silver Skates**
Dodge. 12 illus., 4 in color.

**ROBINSON CRUSOE**
Defoe. 9 drawings, 4 in color.

**PINOCCHIO**
Collodi. 32 illus. by Charles Folkard, 8 in color.

**KIDNAPPED**
Stevenson. 14 illus., 4 in color.

**LITTLE WOMEN**
Alcott. 12 full-page illus., 4 in color.

**PATRIOTIC AMERICAN STORIES**
**Including The Man Without a Country**
Introd. by John M. Foote. 11 full-page drawings, 4 in color.

**LITTLE MEN**
Alcott. 15 illus., 4 in color.

**AN OLD-FASHIONED GIRL**
Alcott. 18 illus., 4 in color.

**DICKEN'S STORIES about Children**
14 illus., 4 in color.

**THE WINGS OF THE MORNING**
Tracy. 4 full pages in color.

**THE BOY'S STORY OF LINDBERGH**
Beamish. 30 photographs.

**WATER BABIES**
Kingsley. 8 full pages in color.

**THE SWISS FAMILY ROBINSON**
Wyss. 12 drawings, 4 in color.

**MOTHER GOOSE NURSERY RHYMES**
Arr. by Marshall. 304 illus., 4 in color.

**FAVORITE FAIRY TALES**
Arr. by Marshall. 104 illus., 4 in color.

**GRIMM'S FAIRY TALES**
64 illus., 4 in color.

**ANDERSEN'S FAIRY TALES**
Andersen. 14 illus., 4 in color.

**FOLK TALES FROM THE FAR EAST**
Meeker. 11 illus., 1 in color.

**THE WONDER BOOK OF MYTHS AND LEGENDS**
Compiled by William B. Forbush. 14 drawings, 4 in color.

**FAIRY TALES OF MANY LANDS**
Illus. with 4 full pages in color.

**THE RED FAIRY BOOK**
Lang. 95 illus., 4 in color.

**THE BLUE FAIRY TALES**
Lang. 107 illus., 4 in color.

**A WONDER BOOK AND TANGLEWOOD TALES**
Hawthorne. 14 colored illus.

**GULLIVER'S TRAVELS**
Swift. 16 drawings, 4 in color, 39 additional illus.

**EIGHT COUSINS**
Alcott. 12 illus., 4 in color.

**THE THREE MUSKETEERS**
Dumas. 14 illus., 4 in color.

**THE ADVENTURES OF TOM SAWYER**
Twain. 44 illus., 4 in color.

**ROSE IN BLOOM**
Alcott. 13 illus., 5 in color.

**NEW FOUND TALES**
Egan. 28 illus., 4 in color.

**WINGS OF FLAME**
Egan. 14 illus., 3 in color.

**THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS**
Bunyan. 44 famous Frederick Barnard drawings, 4 in color.

**JOAN OF ARC**
Holmes. 12 illus., 4 in color.

**THE OREGON TRAIL**
Parkman. 16 illus., 4 in color.

**TWENTY THOUSAND LEAGUES UNDER THE SEA**
Verne. 36 illus., 4 in color.

**MOBY DICK**
Melville. 10 illus , 4 in color.

**UNDER THE LILACS**
Alcott. 12 illus., 4 in color.

**THE WORLD'S GREAT ADVENTURE—1000 Years of Polar Exploration**
Miller. 150 illustrations.

**THE LITTLE LAME PRINCE and THE ADVENTURES OF A BROWNIE**
Mulock. 30 illustrations, 4 in colors.

**THE PRINCE AND THE PAUPER**
Twain. Illus. in color and black and white.

**TOBY TYLER**
Otis. 28 illus., 4 in color.

*These books are obtainable at all booksellers at the same price as this volume.*

**THE JOHN C. WINSTON CO.,** ***Publishers,*** **PHILADELPHIA**

WITKOWER'S
OKSELLERS & STATIONERS